义务教育教科书

# 英语

## 九年级

全一册

（中国）人民教育出版社 课程教材研究所 英语课程教材研究开发中心
（美国）圣智学习集团 编著

人民教育出版社
·北京·

微信公众号：电子课本大全

Copyright © 2014 by People's Education Press Ltd. and Cengage Learning Asia Pte Ltd.
No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means,
without permission in writing from the publisher.

版权共有，未经出版社书面同意，任何人不得以任何形式或方式复制或转换本作品的任何部分。

主　编：刘道义　郑旺全
　　David Nunan
副主编：张献臣　张雅君

主要编写人员：肖　菲　辜翔宇　熊金霞　陆锡钦　张琳琳　龚亚夫　李静纯
　　郭　娟　庄　力　Eden Brough　Edward Yoshioka　Hoi Kin Chiu
　　Yuan Ting Soh　Jacqueline Eu　Andrew Robinson　Guy de Villiers
　　Edward Vickers
责任编辑：肖　菲　辜翔宇　熊金霞
美术编辑：张　蓓

封面设计：吕　旻　Melvin Chong
版面设计：马仕睿
插　　图：严　峥（含封面）　Edwin Ng　陈　刚

义务教育教科书　英语　九年级　全一册
（中国）人民教育出版社　课程教材研究所
　　英语课程教材研究开发中心　编著
（美国）圣　智　学　习　集　团

出　　版　人民教育出版社
　　（北京市海淀区中关村南大街17号院1号楼　邮编：100081）
网　　址　http://www.pep.com.cn
重　　印　×××出版社
发　　行　×××新华书店
印　　刷　×××印刷厂
版　　次　2014年3月第1版
印　　次　　年　月第　次印刷
开　　本　787毫米×1092毫米　1/16
印　　张　12.5
字　　数　300千字
印　　数　　册
书　　号　ISBN 978-7-107-28002-3
定　　价　　元

版权所有·未经许可不得采用任何方式擅自复制或使用本产品任何部分·违者必究
如发现内容质量问题，请登录中小学教材意见反馈平台：jcyjfk.pep.com.cn
如发现印、装质量问题，影响阅读，请与×××联系调换。电话：×××-××××××××××

微信公众号：电子课本大全

# 致同学

同学们，你们好！欢迎你们进入九年级的英语学习！

本套教材是根据你们的心理特点、认知水平和兴趣爱好来编写的。相信在新学年，教材的以下特点会继续帮助你们学好英语：

1. 教材不仅要帮助你们学习英语语言知识，更重要的是要帮助你们发展语言运用能力，让你们学会用英语表达思想、与人交流。

2. 教材充分考虑了你们的生活实际和学习需求，教材的内容和活动都与你们的生活和兴趣紧密相连，目的是让你们在英语学习中不感到枯燥乏味，而是有话可说、有话想说、有话能说。

3. 教材在重视培养你们的语言运用能力的同时，更加重视培养你们的语言学习策略和技能。这些策略和技能是帮助你们进一步学好英语的基础。

4. 教材为你们设计了许多具有交际意义的任务或活动，目的是让你们在英语课堂上“活”起来、“动”起来。英语课堂教学需要你们的充分参与，英语学习需要你们与老师合作、与同学交流。通过参与和互动，你们的英语水平才会得到不断提高。

5. 教材进一步丰富了文化教学的内容，包括我们的民族文化、英语国家的文化和非英语国家的文化。通过文化内容的学习，你们的视野会更开阔，思想会更丰富，思维会更活跃，交流会更得体。

要想学好英语，光靠课本是不够的，你们还需要继续接触更多的英语学习资源。学习英语没有捷径，只有多听、多说、多读、多写、多记、多用才是最有效的办法。因此，你们要充分利用各种资源和机会来学习英语。

同学们，继续努力吧！祝你们英语学习取得更大进步！

编者

2014年3月

微信公众号：电子课本大全

# Contents


| Units | Topics | Functions | Structures |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 1 How can we become good learners? Page 1 | Learning how to learn | Talk about how to study | Verb + *by* with gerund |
| 2 I think that mooncakes are delicious! Page 9 | Festivals | Give a personal reaction | Objective clauses with *that*, *if* and *whether*<br>Exclamatory statements |
| 3 Could you please tell me where the restrooms are? Page 17 | Getting around | Ask for information politely<br>Follow directions | Objective clauses with *wh-* questions |




微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Target Language | Vocabulary | Recycling |
| --- | --- | --- |
| How do you learn English?<br>I learn by studying with a group.<br>Do you learn English by reading aloud?<br>Yes, I do. It helps my pronunciation.<br>How can I read faster?<br>You can read faster by reading word groups.<br>How can I improve my pronunciation?<br>One way is by listening to tapes. | textbook, conversation, pronunciation, sentence, expression, secret, grammar, note, physics, chemistry, partner, speed, ability, brain, attention, knowledge<br>discover, repeat, pronounce, increase, born, create, connect, review<br>patient, active<br>aloud, wisely<br>pay attention to, connect ... with | work, read, listen, ask, help, study, watch, practice, improve, understand, learn, develop, remember, prepare<br>be interested in, be good at, in common, get bored, find out, learn from, fall in love with, because of<br>*How* questions |
| I know that the Water Festival is really fun.<br>I wonder if they'll have the races again next year.<br>I wonder whether June is a good time to visit Hong Kong.<br>I believe that April is the hottest month in Thailand.<br>What fun the Water Festival is!<br>How pretty the dragon boats were! | stranger, relative, pound, dessert, garden, tie, treat, Christmas, novel, business, warmth<br>steal, lay, admire, lie, punish, warn, spread<br>dead, present<br>put on, lay out, end up | fantastic, crowded, delicious, fun, traditional, pretty, beautiful, exciting, interesting, special, scary, popular<br>be similar to, remind ... of, so ... that |
| Excuse me, do you know where I can buy some medicine?<br>Sure. There's a supermarket down the street.<br>Could you please tell me how to get to the post office?<br>Sorry, I'm not sure how to get there.<br>I wonder where we should go next.<br>You should try that new ride over there. | restroom, stamp, postcard, bathroom, rush, staff, grape, east, mall, clerk, corner, speaker, request, direction, address, course<br>pardon, suggest, mail<br>central, convenient, polite, impolite, direct, correct, underground<br>pass by, pardon me | money, magazine, dictionary, dinner, newspaper, information, town, shoes, bookstore, supermarket, bank, park, ride, restaurant, library, museum<br>post office<br>excuse me, go along, turn right/ left, second/third floor, next to<br>Modal verbs |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Units | Topics | Functions | Structures |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 4 I used to be afraid of the dark. Page 25 | How we have changed | Talk about what you used to be like | *Used to* |
| 5 What are the shirts made of? Page 33 | Things made in China | Talk about what products are made of and where they were made | Passive voice (present tense) |
| 6 When was it invented? Page 41 | Inventions | Talk about the history of inventions | Passive voice (past tense) |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Target Language | Vocabulary | Recycling |
| --- | --- | --- |
| I used to be short.<br>I didn't use to be popular in school.<br>You used to be short, didn't you?<br>Yes, I did. / No, I didn't.<br>Did he use to wear glasses?<br>Yes, he did. / No, he didn't. | score, background, guard, speech, public, ant, examination, pride, introduction<br>interview, dare, require, influence, fail<br>humorous, silent, helpful, Asian, European, African, British<br>private, proud, absent, general<br>seldom, exactly<br>from time to time, deal with, in public, be proud of, in person, take pride in | tall, short, outgoing, funny, shy, serious, quiet, friendly, active, brave, thin, strong, famous, popular, afraid, normal<br>straight/curly hair, wear glasses, pay attention to<br>Present perfect tense |
| Are your shirts made of cotton?<br>Yes, they are. And they were made in the US.<br>What's the model plane made of?<br>It's made of used wood and glass.<br>How is tea produced?<br>Tea plants are grown on the sides of mountains.<br>When the leaves are ready, they are picked by hand and then are sent for processing. | chopstick, coin, fork, blouse, silver, glass, cotton, steel, grass, leaf, product, handbag, boss, surface, material, traffic, postman, cap, glove, form, balloon, scissors, heat, France, Germany<br>produce, process, avoid, polish, complete<br>local, mobile, everyday, international, lively<br>be known for, no matter | stamp, wood, gold, paper, silk, painting, tea, mountain, health, business, camera, clothes, watch, toy, kite, festival, competition, art, bamboo<br>model plane<br>Objective clauses |
| When was the zipper invented?<br>It was invented in 1893.<br>Who was it invented by?<br>It was invented by Whitcomb Judson.<br>What is the hot ice-cream scoop used for?<br>It's used for serving really cold ice-cream. | style, project, pleasure, website, pioneer, ruler, smell, doubt, fridge, earthquake, biscuit, cookie, instrument, customer, basket, hero<br>list, mention, boil, translate, lock, divide<br>daily, national, low, sour<br>by accident, take place, without doubt, all of a sudden, by mistake, divide ... into, look up to, not only ... but also | invention, TV, car, telephone, special, ice-cream, shoes, tea, century, country, potato chip, history, mistake, basketball, idea<br>invent, discover, create<br>popular, sweet<br>It is said that ...<br>It is believed that ... |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Units | Topics | Functions | Structures |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 7 **Teenagers should be allowed to choose their own clothes.** Page 49 | Rules | Talk about what you are allowed to do<br>Agree and disagree | *Should* + *be allowed to* |
| 8 **It must belong to Carla.** Page 57 | Mysteries | Make inferences | *Must*, *might*, *could* and *can't* for making inferences |
| 9 **I like music that I can dance to.** Page 65 | Music and movies | Express preferences | Relative clauses with *that*, *who* and *which* |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Target Language | Vocabulary | Recycling |
| --- | --- | --- |
| I don't think sixteen-year-olds should be allowed to drive.<br>I agree. They aren't serious enough.<br>Teenagers should not be allowed to have part-time jobs.<br>I disagree. They can learn a lot from working. | license, safety, field, hug, poem, community, chance, society, choice<br>smoke, cry, lift, regret, manage, educate, enter, support<br>tiny, awful<br>talk back, keep ... away from, make one's own decision, get in the way of | parent, decision, rule, test<br>drive, choose, work, agree, disagree, decide<br>young, silly, serious, old, strict, worried<br>take photos, move out, take care of, look after, care about<br>Adverbial clauses with *when* |
| Whose volleyball is this?<br>It must be Carla's. She loves volleyball.<br>Whose hair band is this?<br>It could be Mei's hair band. Or it might belong to Linda. They both have long hair.<br>What did you see that night?<br>I'm not sure, but it can't be a dog. | truck, rabbit, picnic, noise, policeman, wolf, laboratory, coat, suit, circle, leader, purpose, energy, position, victory, enemy, period<br>attend, express, receive, prevent<br>valuable, pink, sleepy, medical<br>whose, anybody<br>run after, at the same time | volleyball, magazine, book, CD, toy, music, schoolbag, idea<br>remember, believe, think, agree<br>favorite, unusual, strange, special, nervous, worried<br>thousands of<br>Adverbial clauses with *but* and *as* |
| What kind of music do you like?<br>I love music that/which I can sing along with.<br>What kind of movies do you like?<br>I prefer movies that/which give me something to think about.<br>What kind of musicians does Carmen like?<br>She likes musicians who play different kinds of music. | case, war, director, dialog, pain, pity, total, master, wound<br>prefer, suppose, stick, shut, sense, reflect, perform, praise<br>electronic, smooth, spare, down<br>in that case, stick to, plenty of, shut off, once in a while, in total | dance, sing, relax, laugh, enjoy, like, love, record<br>loud, quiet, slow, funny, serious, tired, sad, exciting, scary, happy, comfortable, sweet, salty, interesting, beautiful<br>don't mind, feel like, cheer up<br>not ... anymore, in time, not only ... but also |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Units | Topics | Functions | Structures |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |
| 10 **You're supposed to shake hands.** Page 73 | Customs | Talk about customs and what you are supposed to do | *Supposed to* + infinitive<br>*Expected to* + infinitive<br>*It is* + adj. + infinitive |
| 11 **Sad movies make me cry.** Page 81 | Feelings | Talk about how things affect you | *Make* + sb. + infinitive without *to*<br>*Make* + sb. + adj. |
| 12 **Life is full of the unexpected.** Page 89 | Unexpected events | Narrate past events | Past perfect tense<br>Review of key structures |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Target Language | Vocabulary | Recycling |
| --- | --- | --- |
| What are you supposed to do when you meet someone for the first time? You're supposed to shake hands.<br>Am I supposed to wear jeans? No, you're expected to wear a suit and tie.<br>Is it important to be on time? Yes, it's important to be on time. | capital, noon, passport, chalk, blackboard, coast, season, manner, granddaughter, suggestion<br>kiss, greet, value, knock, exchange, behave<br>mad, northern, eastern, worth, empty, basic<br>except<br>drop by, after all, get mad, make an effort, clean ... off, take off, go out of one's way, make ... feel at home, get used to | meet, wear, arrive<br>late, polite, impolite, important, strange<br>shake hands, on time, make friends, to one's surprise, be used to<br>*Should* for advice<br>*If* clauses<br>Passive voice<br>Adverbial clauses |
| The loud music makes me nervous.<br>Money and fame don't always make people happy.<br>She said that the sad movie made her cry. | friendship, king, queen, palace, power, wealth, lemon, weight, shoulder, goal, coach, courage, agreement<br>examine, kick, pull, nod, disappoint<br>pale, grey<br>drive sb. crazy, the more ... the more, be friends with, leave out, neither ... nor, to start with, let ... down, kick sb. off, pull together | rainy, cloudy, sad, soft, relaxed, loud, nervous, sleepy, mad, unhappy, worried, angry, lucky<br>in common, even though<br>Passive voice |
| When I got to school, I realized that I had left my backpack at home.<br>By the time I got back to school, the bell had rung.<br>Before I got to the bus stop, the bus had already left.<br>As I was waiting in line with the other office workers, I heard a loud sound. | backpack, block, worker, airport, fool, cream, pie, bean, market, discovery, lady, officer<br>oversleep, burn, cancel, disappear<br>unexpected, alive, west, embarrassed, believable, embarrassing<br>above, till<br>give ... a lift, show up, sell out | bus, shower, key, clock, plane, bus stop, earthquake, joke<br>wake up, brush one's teeth, wash one's face, miss, go off, get dressed, get up late, stay up, put on<br>Simple past tense<br>Adverbial clauses |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Units | Topics | Functions | Structures |
|---|---|---|---|
| 13 We're trying to save the earth! Page 97 | Protecting the environment | Talk about pollution and environmental protection | Review of key structures |
| 14 I remember meeting all of you in Grade 7. Page 105 | School days | Share past memories and experiences<br>Look ahead to the future | Review of key structures |
| Page 113 | Notes on the Text | | |
| Page 133 | Tapescripts | | |
| Page 150 | Grammar | | |
| Page 156 | Words and Expressions in Each Unit | | |
| Page 171 | Vocabulary Index | | |
| Page 184 | Irregular Verbs | | |




微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Target Language | Vocabulary | Recycling |
| --- | --- | --- |
| We're trying to save the earth.<br>The river used to be so clean.<br>The air is badly polluted.<br>No scientific studies have shown that shark fins are good for health. | bottom, fisherman, coal, advantage, industry, law, gate, bottle, president, work, metal<br>litter, cost, afford, recycle<br>ugly, wooden, plastic, cruel, harmful<br>take part in, turn off, pay for, throw away, put sth. to good use, pull ... down | clean up, take the bus/subway, ride a bike, cut down, set up<br>Present progressive tense<br>Present perfect tense<br>Passive voice |
| I think that I'll have to study much harder for exams.<br>I'm going to join the school volleyball team.<br>I remember being a volunteer.<br>I'm looking forward to going to senior high school. | survey, standard, row, keyboard, instruction, text, level, degree, manager, gentleman, task, wing<br>double, shall, overcome, congratulate<br>caring, senior, thirsty, thankful, separate, lastly, ahead<br>in a row, make a mess, keep one's cool, senior high (school), believe in, first of all, be thirsty for, ahead of, separate from, set out | no matter, full of, deal with, be proud of, give up, grow up, work out<br>Objective clauses<br>*Be going to* |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 1

Section A

## How can we become good learners?

Language Goal: Talk about how to study

**1a** **Check (✔) the ways you study English. Then add other ways you sometimes study.**

| | |
|---|---|
| _____ a. by working with friends | _____ e. by asking the teacher for help |
| _____ b. by making word cards | _____ |
| _____ c. by reading the textbook | _____ |
| _____ d. by listening to tapes | _____ |




**1b** **Listen. How do these students study for a test? Write letters from 1a above.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| _____ 1. Meiping | _____ 2. Peter | _____ 3. Tony |

**1c** **Make conversations about how you study for a test.**

A: How do you study for a test?
B: I study by working with a group.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Listen and check (✔) the questions you hear.**



| Questions | Answers |
|---|---|
| 1. ____ Does anyone learn English by watching videos? | ____ |
| 2. ____ Do you have conversations with friends in English? | ____ |
| 3. ____ What about listening to tapes? | ____ |
| 4. ____ What about reading aloud to practice pronunciation? | ____ |
| 5. ____ Have you ever studied with a group? | ____ |

**2b** **Listen again. Match each answer below with a question above.**

a. Yes, I have. I've learned a lot that way.
b. Oh, yes. It really improves my speaking skills.
c. I do that sometimes. I think it helps.
d. No. It's too hard to understand spoken English.

**2c** **Make conversations using the information in 2a and 2b.**

A: Have you ever studied with a group?
B: Yes, I have. I've learned a lot that way.

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**



Jack: Annie, I'm a little nervous. I have to finish reading a book and give a report next Monday.
Annie: That doesn't sound too bad.
Jack: But I'm a very slow reader.
Annie: Just read quickly to get the main ideas at first. Don't read word by word. Read word groups.
Jack: But I don't understand many of the words. I have to use a dictionary.
Annie: Try to guess a word's meaning by reading the sentences before and after it. You probably understand more than you think.
Jack: That sounds difficult!
Annie: Well, be patient. It takes time. You can become better by reading something you enjoy every day. The more you read, the faster you'll be.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the passage about Wei Fen and answer the questions.**

1. Why did Wei Fen find it difficult to learn English?
2. What did she do in English class?
3. What is the secret to language learning?

## How I Learned to Learn English

Last year, I did not like my English class. Every class was like a bad dream. The teacher spoke so quickly that I did not understand her most of the time. I was afraid to ask questions because of my poor pronunciation. I just hid behind my textbook and never said anything.

Then one day I watched an English movie called *Toy Story*. I fell in love with this exciting and funny movie! So I began to watch other English movies, too. Although I could not understand everything the characters said, their body language and the expressions on their faces helped me to get the meaning. I also realized I could get the meaning by listening for just the key words. My pronunciation improved as well by listening to the conversations in English movies. I discovered that listening to something interesting is the secret to language learning. I also learned useful sentences like "It's a piece of cake" or "It serves you right". I did not understand these sentences at first. But because I wanted to understand the story, I looked them up in a dictionary.



Now I really enjoy my English class. I want to learn new words and more grammar so that I can have a better understanding of English movies.

**3b** **Complete the sentences with what Wei Fen learned from watching movies. Use words and phrases from the passage.**

1. I can understand the meaning by watching their _____ and the _____ on their faces.
2. I can get the meaning by listening for just the _____.
3. My pronunciation improved by listening to the _____ in English movies.
4. I learned _____ sentences like "It's a piece of cake" by watching the movies.
5. I can find the meaning of new words by looking them up in a _____.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| How do you learn English? | I learn by studying with a group. |
| Do you learn English by reading aloud? | Yes, I do. It helps my pronunciation. |
| How can I read faster? | You can read faster by reading word groups. |
| How can I improve my pronunciation? | One way is by listening to tapes. |

**4a** **Match the questions and answers.**

1. How do you practice speaking?
2. How do you learn new words?
3. How do you improve your writing?
4. How do you practice listening?
5. How do you improve your pronunciation?
6. How do you learn grammar?

a. By watching English programs.
b. By listening to a tape and repeating out loud.
c. By having conversations with friends.
d. By taking notes, doing exercises and reading a lot.
e. By making word cards.
f. By writing e-mails to my pen pals.

**4b** **Make sentences using the structure "do sth. by doing" with the subjects in the box and information that is true for you.**

math physics chemistry Chinese history geography

*e.g.* I usually practice my English by taking notes / reading books and newspapers / speaking English with my classmates / memorizing sentence patterns.

**4c** **Check (✔) what you do to learn English. Then interview your partner.**

A: Do you learn English by doing grammar exercises?
B: Yes, I do.
A: How often do you do them?
B: ...

| | I learn English by ... | | | My partner learns English by ... | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | yes | no | how often | yes | no | how often |
| doing grammar exercises | | | | | | |
| taking notes in English | | | | | | |
| reading English books/magazines | | | | | | |
| keeping a diary in English | | | | | | |
| using an English dictionary | | | | | | |
| ... | | | | | | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **Learning English can be difficult. What things are difficult for you? Read the list. Check (✔) the statements that are true for you.**

_____ I can't pronounce some of the words.
_____ I can't always understand spoken English.
_____ I don't know how to increase my reading speed.
_____ I can't spell some English words.
_____ I often make mistakes in grammar.

**1b** **What other things are difficult for you? Make a list.**

1. I don't know enough words to write well.
2. _____
3. _____

**1c** **Paul finds it difficult to learn English. Listen and complete the learning challenges he talks about.**



**Challenges**

1. He can't get the _____ right.
2. He _____ a lot of new words.
3. He can't always _____ when people talk to him.
4. He doesn't get much _____ practice.

**1d** **Listen again. Complete the solutions.**

**Solutions**

1. _____ can help.
2. He can always _____ in his notebook and study them at home.
3. He can _____ to practice speaking.
4. He should find a _____ to practice writing.

**1e** **Role-play conversations using the information in 1c and 1d.**

A: I don't have a partner to practice English with.
B: Maybe you should join an English club.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **What good learning habits can you think of? Make a list and discuss them with your partner.**

**2b** **Read the passage quickly and check if any of the habits you listed in 2a are mentioned. Which four habits of successful learners can you find from the passage?**

**USING DICTIONARIES**

This can help you find the definition that matches the context of the word in the text.

## How Can You Become a Successful Learner?

Everyone is born with the ability to learn. But whether or not you can do this well depends on your learning habits. Research shows that successful learners have some good habits in common.

**Creating an interest in what they learn**

Studies show that if you are interested in something, your brain is more active and it is also easier for you to pay attention to it for a long time. Good learners often connect what they need to learn with something interesting. For example, if they need to learn English and they like music or sports, they can listen to English songs or watch sports programs in English. This way they will not get bored.

**Practicing and learning from mistakes**

Good learners think about what they are good at and what they need to practice more. Remember, "Use it or lose it." Even if you learn something well, you will forget it unless you use it. "Practice makes perfect." Good learners will keep practicing what they have learned, and they are not afraid of making mistakes. Alexander Graham Bell did not invent the telephone overnight. He succeeded by trying many times and learning from his mistakes.

**Developing their study skills**

It is not enough to just study hard. Good learners know the best way they can study. For example, they may take notes by writing down key words or by drawing mind maps. They also look for ways to review what they have learned. They may do this by reading their notes every day or by explaining the information to another student.



**Asking questions**

Good learners often ask questions during or after class. They even ask each other and try to find out the answers. Knowledge comes from questioning.

Learning is a lifelong journey because every day brings something new. Everything that you learn becomes a part of you and changes you, so learn wisely and learn well.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Read the passage again and answer the questions.**

1. Does the writer think that everyone is born with the ability to learn well? Do you agree? Why or why not?
2. Why is it a good idea to connect something you need to learn with something you are interested in?
3. What do the sayings "Use it or lose it" and "Practice makes perfect" mean? Do you agree with them?
4. Do good learners learn from mistakes, or are they afraid of making mistakes?
5. What study skills does the writer talk about? Do you have those study skills?
6. Do you agree that learning is a lifelong journey? Why or why not?

**2d** **Look up the following words from the passage in the dictionary. Then write a sentence for each word.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| brain *n.* | connect *v.* | overnight *adv.* |
| attention *n.* | review *v.* | knowledge *n.* |
| ability *n.* | active *adj.* | wisely *adv.* |

***e.g.*** brain: A good way to train the brain is to do some math exercises every day.

**2e** **Do you think you are a good learner? What learning habits do you think are useful? Discuss with your group and share your ideas with the class.**

**3a** **Your friend wants to improve his/her English and asks you for help. What are the three best ways to learn and why? Make some notes in the chart.**

| Best ways to learn | Reasons | Examples |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Being interested in what you do | If you are interested in something, your brain will be more active and ... | If you like music, you can learn English by listening to English songs. |
| 2. | | |
| 3. | | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write a letter to your friend. Give him/her some advice about the best ways to learn English. Use your notes in 3a.**

Use the following expressions to help you:

There are three good ways to ...
I think you should ...
If you do this, you will ...
It is also a good idea to ... because ...
You could try to improve your English by ...
This will help you to ...

## Self Check

**1 Fill in the blanks with the words in the box.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| practice | develop | remember | prepare |
| take notes | until | worry about | everything |

Are you stressed out each time you have a test? You don't have to be if you _____ smart study skills. Remember to _____ in class and review them on your own or with friends after class. Then _____ what you learned by doing exercises. Try to study and _____ information bit by bit instead of waiting _____ the last minute to study _____ at once. If you _____ well for a test, then there's nothing to _____!

**2 Number these sentences in order to make a conversation.**

____ What's the matter?
____ Well, I practice my listening by listening to the tape over and over again until I can understand everything.
____ So you want to practice your listening?
____ Hi, Jake. I need your help.
____ Uh-huh. Do you have any advice?
____ OK, I'll try that.
____ I have a listening test next week.

**3 Give advice to these people.**

1. Jane is a very slow reader.
   She should improve her reading speed _____.
2. Li Ming wants to improve his listening.
   He could practice his listening _____.
3. Meiping doesn't know many English words.
   She could learn more words _____.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 2

Section A

## I think that mooncakes are delicious!

Language Goal: Give a personal reaction

**1a** **Match the pictures with the descriptions.**

1. _____ The Water Festival in Thailand
2. _____ The Dragon Boat Festival in Hong Kong
3. _____ The Chinese Spring Festival in Beijing
4. _____ The Lantern Festival in Jiangxi




**1b** **Listen and circle *T* for true or *F* for false.**

1. Bill thinks that the races were not that interesting to watch. T F
2. Mary thinks that the teams were fantastic. T F
3. Bill wonders whether they'll have *zongzi* again next year. T F
4. Bill and Mary believe that they'll be back next year to watch the races. T F

**1c** **Talk about the festivals in 1a.**

A: What do you like best about the Dragon Boat Festival?
B: I love the races. I think that they're fun to watch.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Listen to the conversation between Wu Ming and Harry and circle the correct words in the sentences.**

1. Wu Ming and Harry are cousins / strangers / friends.
2. Wu Ming went to Singapore / Hong Kong / Macao for his vacation.
3. Wu Ming visited his relatives / friends / classmates.
4. Wu Ming liked eating out / shopping / the Dragon Boat Festival best.

**2b** **Wu Ming did a lot of fun activities, but there were also downsides. Listen again and fill in the chart.**

| Fun activities | Downsides |
|---|---|
| Eating out | |
| Shopping | |
| Dragon Boat Festival in June | |

**2c** **Role-play conversations between Wu Ming and Harry. Use the information in 2a and 2b or make your own conversations.**

A: What did you do on your vacation?
B: I visited my cousins. I think that we ate five meals a day! I've put on five pounds!
A: I guess the food was delicious, right?

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**



Clara: Guess what? I'm going to Chiang Mai in two weeks.
Ben: Wow, sounds like fun! But I believe that April is the hottest month of the year there.
Clara: Yes, that's true. But there's a water festival there from April 13th to 15th.
Ben: I wonder if it's similar to the Water Festival of the Dai people in Yunnan Province.
Clara: Yes, I think so. This is the time of the Thai New Year. People go on the streets to throw water at each other.
Ben: Cool! But why do they do that?
Clara: Because the new year is a time for cleaning and washing away bad things. Then you'll have good luck in the new year.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the passage about the Mid-Autumn Festival and answer the questions.**

1. How do people celebrate the Mid-Autumn Festival?
2. What story is the reading about?

## Full Moon, Full Feelings

Chinese people have been celebrating the Mid-Autumn Festival and enjoying mooncakes for centuries. Mooncakes are in the shape of a full moon on the Mid-Autumn night. They carry people's wishes to the families they love and miss.

There are many traditional folk stories about this festival. However, most people think that the story of Chang'e is the most touching. Chang'e was Hou Yi's beautiful wife. After Hou Yi shot down the nine suns, a goddess gave him magic medicine to thank him. Whoever took this could live forever, and Hou Yi planned to take it with Chang'e. However, a bad man, Pang Meng, tried to steal the medicine when Hou Yi was not home. Chang'e refused to give it to him and took it all. She became very light and flew up to the moon. Hou Yi was so sad that he called out her name to the moon every night. One night, he found that the moon was so bright and round that he could see his wife there. He quickly laid out her favorite fruits and desserts in the garden. How he wished that Chang'e could come back!



After this, people started the tradition of admiring the moon and sharing mooncakes with their families.

**3b** **Read the passage again. Put the events in the correct order.**

____ Pang Meng tried to steal the medicine.
____ A goddess thanked Hou Yi by giving him magic medicine.
____ Chang'e refused to give Pang Meng the medicine and took it all.
1 Hou Yi shot down the nine suns and saved the people on the earth.
____ Hou Yi was very sad and watched the moon at night, and wished his wife could come back.
____ As a result, Chang'e became light and flew up to the sky.
____ Hou Yi planned to take the medicine with his wife.

**3c** **Without looking at the passage, try to complete the sentences with the correct words.**

1. People like to a_____ the full moon on the Mid-Autumn night.
2. The story of Chang'e is one of many t_____ folk stories.
3. Hou Yi got m_____ medicine for shooting down the nine suns.
4. Pang Meng wanted to s_____ the medicine.
5. Hou Yi l_____ out fruits and desserts in the garden.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| I know that the Water Festival is really fun. | What fun the Water Festival is! |
| I wonder if they'll have the races again next year. | How fantastic the dragon boat teams were! |
| I wonder whether June is a good time to visit Hong Kong. | How pretty the dragon boats were! |
| I believe that April is the hottest month in Thailand. | How delicious the food is in Hong Kong! |

**4a** **Write sentences using the words given.**

1. think / Lantern Festival / beautiful
   I think that the Lantern Festival is beautiful.
2. don't know / whether / he / come home / for the festival
3. believe / Water Festival / most / fun
4. wonder / if / mooncakes / delicious
5. how / exciting / races
6. what / interesting / city

**4b** **Read the passage below and underline the objective clauses. If possible, write your own sentences about Mother's Day and Father's Day using objective clauses.**

Dear Xia Yu,

Do you know that there are two special days for parents in America? One is Mother's Day on the second Sunday of May, and the other is Father's Day on the third Sunday of June. On these two days, American children often give gifts to their parents or take them out for lunch or dinner. Common gifts are flowers and cards for mothers and shirts or ties for fathers. I heard that it is becoming more and more popular to celebrate Mother's Day and Father's Day in China. I wonder if children over there also give similar gifts to their parents. I believe that there are many ways to show our love. Actually, we don't have to spend a lot of money. It is also a good idea to help parents to do something instead.

June

**4c** **Which festival do you like best? Ask your group and report to the class.**

*e.g.* In our group, David's favorite festival is ... He thinks that ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# Section B

**1a** **Look at the pictures and words related to Halloween. What do you think this festival is about?**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| scary | dress up | haunted house | black cat | candy |
| ghost | trick or treat | October | spider | |






**1b** **Listen and answer the questions.**

1. Where is Halloween popular?
2. When do people celebrate Halloween?
3. What does Wu Yu think of this festival?

**1c** **Listen again and fill in the blanks.**

1. Many people make their _____ look scary. They may _____ the lights and light candles. They sometimes also put things like spiders and ghosts around the doors and _____.
2. Little kids and even parents _____ as ghosts or black cats. They can also dress up as fun things like _____ characters.
3. Parents take their children around the neighborhood to ask for _____ and treats.
4. "Trick or treat" means kids will _____ a trick on you if you don't _____ them a treat.

**1d** **Think about the Halloween activities that interest you most. Discuss what you have learned with a partner.**

A: What have you learned about Halloween?
B: Oh, I know it's a popular festival in North America and it's on October 31st.
A: What do you like most about this festival?
B: I think it's fun to dress up as cartoon characters!



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **What do you know about Christmas? Discuss in groups and create a mind map.**




**2b** **Read the passage about Christmas and answer the questions.**

1. What are the common things that people think of for Christmas?
2. Who wrote *A Christmas Carol*?
3. What is the true meaning of Christmas?

**INFERRING**

**This means you have to "read between the lines" to get the meanings that are not clearly stated in a text.**

## A Christmas Carol

Many would agree that when we think of Christmas, we probably think of gifts, Christmas trees and Santa Claus. But behind all these things lies the true meaning of Christmas: the importance of sharing and giving love and joy to people around us. The story in *A Christmas Carol* is perhaps the best example of this.

*A Christmas Carol* is a famous short novel written by Charles Dickens. It is about an old man named Scrooge who never laughs or smiles. He is mean and only thinks about himself. He doesn't treat others nicely. He just cares about whether he can make more money and he hates Christmas. One Christmas Eve, Scrooge sees the ghost of Jacob Marley, his dead business partner. Marley used to be just like Scrooge, so he was punished after he died. He warns Scrooge to change his ways if he doesn't want to end up like him. He also tells Scrooge to expect three spirits to visit him.

That night, three ghosts visit Scrooge. First, the Ghost of Christmas Past takes him back to his childhood and reminds Scrooge of his happier days as a child. Then the second spirit, the Ghost of Christmas Present, takes him to see how others are spending Christmas this year. Everyone is happy, even poor people. The last one, the Ghost of Christmas Yet to Come, takes him to the future. Scrooge sees that he is dead, but nobody cares. He is so scared that he wakes up in his bed and finds out it is only the next morning — Christmas Day!



He decides to change his life and promises to be a better person. He happily celebrates Christmas with his relatives. He also gives gifts to people in need. He now treats everyone with kindness and warmth, spreading love and joy everywhere he goes. And that is the true spirit of Christmas!



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Read the passage again and complete the chart.**

| What does Scrooge see when he's with ... | |
|---|---|
| the Ghost of Christmas Past? | |
| the Ghost of Christmas Present? | |
| the Ghost of Christmas Yet to Come? | |

**2d** **Answer the questions. Some answers need to be inferred.**

1. Why does Scrooge hate Christmas?
2. Does Scrooge have a lot of friends? Why or why not?
3. Why was Jacob Marley punished after he died?
4. Does Jacob Marley want to help Scrooge? How do you know?
5. How does Scrooge feel when he wakes up on Christmas Day?
6. What does Scrooge do after seeing the three spirits?

**2e** **What do you think the three ghosts say to Scrooge when they visit him? In groups of four, make a conversation between the three ghosts and Scrooge. Role-play the conversation in front of the class.**

**3a** **Your English-speaking pen pal wants to know about your favorite Chinese festival. Make some notes about the festival.**

| What is the name of the festival? | |
|---|---|
| When is it? | |
| What do people eat? | |
| What do people do? | |
| Why do you like it so much? | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write a letter to your pen pal and tell him/her about your favorite Chinese festival. Use your notes in 3a.**

**In your letter:**

First, introduce the festival and when it is celebrated.

Then talk about what people do and eat.

Finally, explain why you like it best and how it makes you feel.

**Use the following expressions to help you:**

My favorite Chinese festival is ...
It is celebrated in/on ...
During this festival, people ...
It's my favorite festival because ...
It makes me feel ...

## Self Check

**1** **Complete the passage with the words in the box.**

spread ... around
between ... and
give out
business
lay
relatives

Many Western countries celebrate Easter. This holiday is always on a Sunday _____ March 22nd _____ April 25th. It celebrates the beginning of new life. Hens _____ eggs, giving birth to life, so an egg is a symbol of new life. A popular activity during Easter is to hide eggs around your home or garden for friends or _____ to find. These can be real eggs, but they are more often chocolate eggs. Not only do people _____ them _____ in different hiding places for an egg hunt, but they also _____ these treats as gifts. So just like Christmas, Easter creates good _____ for supermarkets and chocolate stores.

**2** **Rewrite these sentences as exclamations.**

1. The mooncakes are delicious. ➡ _____!
2. The festival will be fun. ➡ _____!
3. This concert is boring. ➡ _____!
4. I'm really excited. ➡ _____!
5. The band played really loud music. ➡ _____!

**3** **Make sentences about a festival/festivals you like using these words + *that/whether/if*.**

I think _____.
I know _____.
I believe _____.
I wonder _____.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

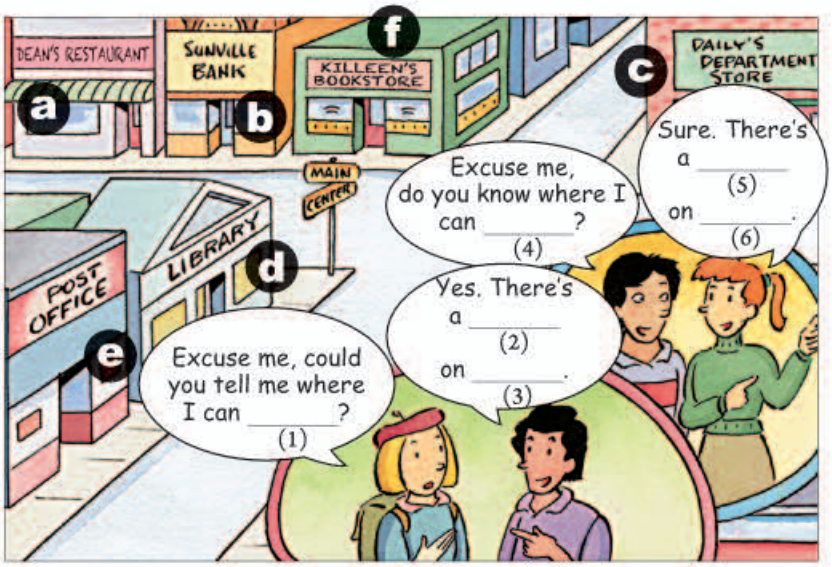
# UNIT 3

Section A

## Could you please tell me where the restrooms are?

**Language Goals:**
Ask for information politely;
Follow directions

**1a** **Where can you do the things below? Match each thing with a place in the picture. Many different answers are possible.**




| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| b | get some money | ____ | get some information about the town |
| ____ | get some magazines | ____ | buy a newspaper |
| ____ | have dinner | ____ | buy some stamps |
| ____ | get a dictionary | ____ | get a pair of shoes |

**1b** **Listen and complete the conversations in the picture in 1a.**

**1c** **Make conversations using the information in 1a. Then talk about your own town/city.**

A: Excuse me, could you please tell me how to get to the bookstore?
B: Sure, just go along Main Street until you pass Center Street. The bookstore is on your right, beside the bank.
A: Thanks. Do you know when the bookstore closes today?
B: It closes at 7:00 p.m. today.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Listen. You will hear some of the directions below. Number the directions in the order you hear them.**




____ Go to the third floor.
____ Turn left.
1 Go to the second floor.
____ Turn right.
____ The supermarket is between the flower store and the bookstore.
____ Go past the bookstore.

**2b** **Listen again. Draw a line in the picture above to show how the boy walks to the supermarket.**

**2c** **Make conversations about the other places in the picture in 2a.**

A: Excuse me, do you know where I can get some postcards?
B: Sure. Go to the second floor. There's a bookstore between the bank and the supermarket.

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**



He Wei: This is Fun Times Park, the biggest amusement park in our city!
Alice: I'm excited to try the rides!
He Wei: What should we start with? There's Space World, Water World, Animal World ...
Alice: Before we decide, could you first tell me where the restrooms are?
He Wei: Pardon? Restroom? You want to rest? But we haven't even started yet!
Alice: Oh no, I don't mean that. I mean ... you know, a washroom or bathroom.
He Wei: Hmm ... so you mean ... the toilet?
Alice: Yes! Sorry, maybe people in China don't often use the word "restroom" when they speak English.
He Wei: That's right. In China, we normally say "toilet" or "washroom" in English. Anyway, they're over there.
Alice: OK. I'll be quick!
He Wei: No problem. You don't need to rush!



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the conversation and answer the questions below.**

1. Why did Alice not want to go on the new ride? How did she feel after the ride?
2. What is special about Uncle Bob's restaurant? Should Alice and He Wei get there early for dinner? Why?

## Fun Times Park — Always a Fun Time!



*[Alice and He Wei are in Space World.]*

Alice: I wonder where we should go next.
He Wei: How about that new ride over there?
Alice: Well ... it looks scary.
He Wei: Come on! I promise it'll be exciting! If you're scared, just shout or hold my hand.

*[After the ride ... ]*

Alice: You were right! That was fun! I was scared at first, but shouting did help.
He Wei: See, that wasn't so bad, right? You never know until you try something.
Alice: Yes, I'm so glad I tried it!
He Wei: Do you want to go to Water World now?
Alice: Sure, but I'm getting hungry. Do you know where we can get some good food quickly?
He Wei: Of course! I suggest Water City Restaurant in Water World. It serves delicious food.
Alice: Great! Let's go!

*[On their way to Water City Restaurant, Alice and He Wei pass by Uncle Bob's.]*

Alice: Look! This restaurant looks interesting. The sign says a rock band plays here every evening.
He Wei: Why don't we come back here for dinner later? Let's ask what time the band starts playing.

*[Alice and He Wei walk up to a staff person at the door.]*

He Wei: Excuse me, could you tell us when the band starts playing this evening?
Staff: Eight o'clock. The restaurant is always busy at that time, so come a little earlier to get a table.
He Wei: OK. Thank you!

**3b** **<u>Underline</u> the questions or statements in the conversation that ask for information. Rewrite them in a different way.**

***e.g.*** I wonder where we should go next.
Could you tell me where we could go next?



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| Excuse me, do you know where I can buy some medicine? | Sure. There's a supermarket down the street. |
| Could you please tell me how to get to the post office? | Sorry, I'm not sure how to get there. |
| Could you tell us when the band starts playing this evening? | It starts at 8:00 p.m. |
| I wonder where we should go next. | You should try that new ride over there. |

**4a** **Rewrite the questions to make them more polite.**

1. Where can I buy some grapes or other fruit?

_____

2. How does this CD player work?

_____

3. How do I get to the Central Library?

_____

4. Is the Italian restaurant nearby open on Mondays?

_____

**4b** **What should each person ask in the following situations?**

1. Tim is very hungry.

   Could you tell me where I can get something to eat?

   Excuse me, can you tell me how I can get to a nearby restaurant?

   Pardon me, do you know if there's a restaurant around here?

2. Sally needs to mail a letter.

_____

3. Helen needs to know when the bike shop closes.

_____

4. Ben is wondering if there's a bank in the shopping center.

_____

**4c** **Write four questions that a tourist might ask about your town/city. Then role-play conversations with your partner.**

A: Excuse me, could you please tell me where the nearest bank is?
B: Sure. You go east along this street ...

1. _____ ?
2. _____ ?
3. _____ ?
4. _____ ?



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **What qualities are important for each place? Write the words from the box next to each place below. Write the most important words first.**

| | |
|---|---|
| interesting | fascinating |
| inexpensive | quiet |
| uncrowded | big |
| beautiful | convenient |
| safe | clean |

| Places | Qualities |
|---|---|
| 1. restroom | clean, |
| 2. museum | |
| 3. restaurant | |
| 4. park | |
| 5. subway | |
| 6. mall | |

**1b** **Talk about places in your city using the words in 1a.**

A: The Fine Arts Museum is really interesting.
B: Yes, and it's beautiful, too.

**1c** **Listen to the conversations and complete the sentences.**

**Conversation 1**
The boy asks about _____, and the clerk tells him to go to Green Land.

**Conversation 2**
The girl asks about _____, and the clerk tells her to go to the corner of Market and Middle Streets.

**Conversation 3**
The mother asks about _____. The father wants to go to a _____ museum. The younger girl wants to go to a _____ museum. The boy wants to go to a _____ museum. The older girl wants to go to an _____ museum. The clerk suggests they go to the _____ museum.




**1d** **Listen again. Check your answers in 1c.**

**1e** **Role-play the conversations between the clerk and the tourists.**

A: Can you tell me where there's a good place to eat?
B: Of course. What kind of food do you like?
A: ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Where do you need to make polite requests? Think of some possible situations. Discuss them with your partner.**

**2b** **Read the article and underline the topic sentence for each paragraph.**

**USING SUITABLE LANGUAGE**

**In different situations, you need to choose and use suitable language based on cultural knowledge.**

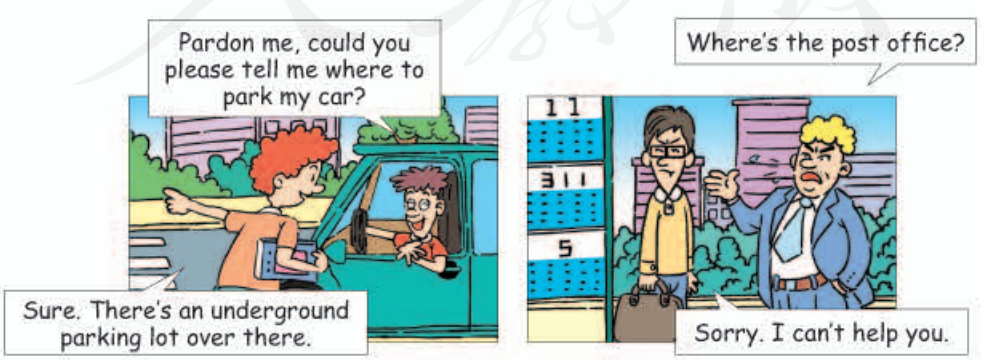
## Could You Please ...?

When you visit a foreign country, it is important to know how to ask for help politely. For example, you may ask "Where are the restrooms?" or "Could you please tell me where the restrooms are?" These are similar requests for directions. Both are correct, but the first one sounds less polite. That is because it is a very direct question. It is not enough to just ask a question correctly. We also need to learn how to be polite when we ask for help.

Good speakers change the way they speak in different situations. The expressions they use might depend on whom they are speaking to or how well they know each other. It is all right to ask your classmates direct questions because you know them well. However, if you say to your teacher, "When is the school trip?", this might sound impolite. But if you say, "Excuse me, Mr. West. Do you know when the school trip is?", this will sound much more polite.

Usually polite questions are longer. They include expressions such as "Could you please ...?" or "May I ask ...?" It sounds more polite to say, "Peter, could you please tell me your e-mail address?" than "Peter, tell me your e-mail address." Sometimes we even need to spend time leading into a request. For example, we might first say to a stranger, "Excuse me, I wonder if you can help me" or "I'm sorry to trouble you, but ..." before asking for help.

It might seem more difficult to speak politely than directly. However, it is important to learn how to use the right language in different situations. This will help you communicate better with other people.






微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Find the direct questions and polite requests from the passage.**

| Direct questions | Polite requests |
|---|---|
| 1. | 1. |
| 2. | 2. |
| 3. | 3. |

**2d** **Read the requests below. In the second column, write A if you would say it to someone you know and B if you would say it to a stranger. In the last column, write where you think these people are.**

| Request | Person | Place |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Will you pass the salt? | | |
| 2. Do you know where I can change some money, please? | | |
| 3. Could you tell me what just happened? | | |
| 4. Can you please tell me where the nearest station is? | | |
| 5. Excuse me, do you know what time it begins, please? | | |
| 6. Let me know when you're ready, OK? | | |
| 7. Could you possibly tell me the way to the village school? | | |

**3a** **Imagine you are going on a short study vacation at a school in an English-speaking country. What would you like to know before you go? Write some polite, indirect questions about the following topics.**

| Topic | Question |
|---|---|
| The course you will study | |
| The time of the course | |
| Where and what you can eat | |
| Where you will stay | |
| What activities you can do | |
| Travel to the school | |
| Other | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write a polite letter to the school asking for the information you want to know. Use your notes in 3a.**

In your letter, you should:
- introduce yourself
- say when you are coming
- politely ask for information
- thank the person for helping you

**Use the following expressions to help you:**

My name is ... and I'm from ...
I'll be coming to your school for ...
I'd like to know about ...
I would like to thank you for ...
I'm looking forward to your reply.

## Self Check

**1 Fill in the blanks with the words in the box.**

corner
direct
polite
rush
suggest
plan

1. A: Could you tell me where the library is?
   B: It's on the _____ of Main and Center Streets.
2. A: I wonder why you don't wake up earlier in the morning. You're always in a _____ to get to school on time.
   B: Yes, you're right. I need to _____ my time better.
3. A: I want to buy some winter clothes. Could you tell me which place would be a good choice for me to go to?
   B: I _____ Jenny's Clothes Store in Century Shopping Mall. It's convenient to get to.
4. In many countries, it is often not _____ to ask very _____ questions when you meet someone for the first time.

**2 Write questions and answers using the words given.**

1. buy a magazine / bookstore on the third floor
   Q: Could you please tell me where I can buy a magazine?
   A: There's a bookstore on the third floor.
2. get some stamps / post office on Green Street
   Q: _____
   A: _____
3. shopping center opens / 10:00 a.m.
   Q: _____
   A: _____
4. get to the Japanese restaurant / go along Main Street and turn right on Lake Street
   Q: _____
   A: _____



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 4

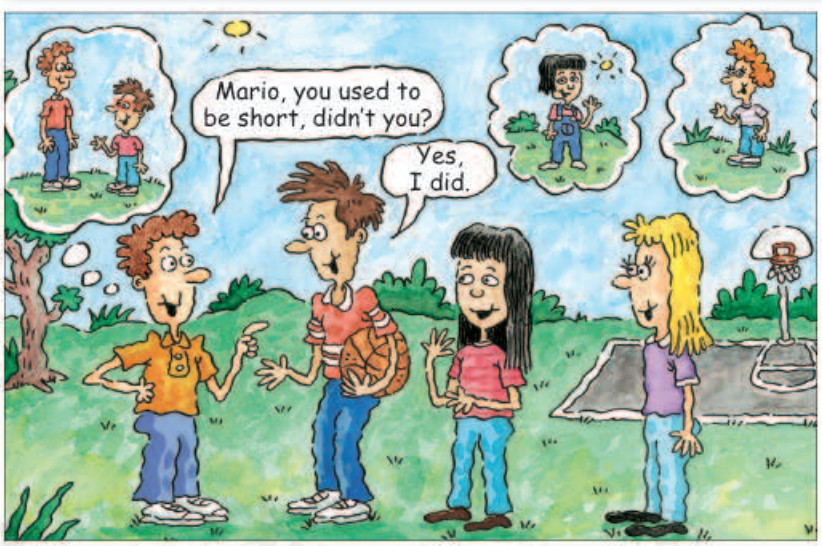
Section A

## I used to be afraid of the dark.

Language Goal: Talk about what you used to be like

**1a** **Fill in the chart with words to describe people.**

| Appearance | Personality |
|---|---|
| tall | outgoing |
| straight hair | funny |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |




**1b** **Listen. Bob is seeing some friends for the first time in four years. What did his friends use to look like?**

1. Mario used to be _____. He used to wear _____.
2. Amy used to be _____. She used to have _____ hair.
3. Tina used to have _____ and _____ hair.

**1c** **Look at the picture in 1a and make conversations.**

A: Did Mario use to be short?
B: Yes, he did. He used to be really short.
A: What's he like now?
B: He's tall now.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Listen and check (✔) the words you hear.**



| | | |
|---|---|---|
| ____ friendly | ____ outgoing | ____ serious |
| ____ humorous | ____ silent | ____ active |
| ____ brave | ____ quiet | ____ helpful |

**2b** **Listen again and complete the chart about how Paula has changed.**

| In the past | Now |
|---|---|
| 1. Paula used to be really _____. She was always silent in class. She wasn't very _____. She was never brave enough to ask questions.<br>2. She got good grades in _____. She was also good in _____. She used to play the _____. | 1. Now she's more interested in _____. She plays _____ almost every day. She's also on a _____ team.<br>2. She still plays the _____ from time to time. |

**2c** **Make conversations about Paula using the information in 2b.**

A: Paula used to be really quiet.
B: I know. She was always silent in class.

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**



Alfred: This party is such a great idea!
Gina: I agree. It's been three years since we last saw our primary school classmates.
Alfred: It's interesting to see how people have changed.
Gina: Billy has changed so much! He used to be so shy and quiet.
Alfred: Yeah, his face always turned red when he talked to girls!
Gina: I used to see him reading in the library every day.
Alfred: That's because he was a really good student. He studied hard and got good scores on his exams.
Gina: Did he use to wear glasses?
Alfred: Yes, and he used to be thin, too. But look how big and strong he is now!
Gina: He's so popular now. Look at all the girls around him!



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the article and identify the paragraphs [1–3] in which the information appears.**

_____ how Candy's life has changed
_____ Candy's advice to young people
_____ Candy's background

## From Shy Girl to Pop Star

1 For this month's *Young World* magazine, I interviewed 19-year-old Asian pop star Candy Wang. Candy told me that she used to be really shy and took up singing to deal with her shyness. As she got better, she dared to sing in front of her class, and then for the whole school. Now she's not shy anymore and loves singing in front of crowds.

2 I asked Candy how life was different after she became famous. She explained that there are many good things, like being able to travel and meet new people all the time. "I didn't use to be popular in school, but now I get tons of attention everywhere I go." However, too much attention can also be a bad thing. "I always have to worry about how I appear to others, and I have to be very careful about what I say or do. And I don't have much private time anymore. Hanging out with friends is almost impossible for me now because there are always guards around me."



3 What does Candy have to say to all those young people who want to become famous? "Well," she begins slowly, "you have to be prepared to give up your normal life. You can never imagine how difficult the road to success is. Many times I thought about giving up, but I fought on. You really require a lot of talent and hard work to succeed. Only a very small number of people make it to the top."

**3b** **Read the article again and complete the sentences about Candy.**

1. She used to be shy, but now she's not shy _____.
2. She didn't use to be _____ in school, but now she gets lots of attention.
3. She used to _____ with friends, but it is almost impossible now.
4. She didn't use to _____ how she appears to others, but now she does.

**3c** **Suppose you are the interviewer and your partner is Candy. Ask and answer questions.**



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| I used to be short. | I didn't use to be popular in school. |
| Paula used to be really quiet. | She didn't use to like tests. |
| You used to be short, didn't you? | Yes, I did. / No, I didn't. |
| Did he use to wear glasses? | Yes, he did. / No, he didn't. |

**4a** **Write sentences about the past using *used to*.**

1. Grace / watch a lot of TV / watch a lot of movies
   Grace used to watch a lot of TV. She didn't use to watch a lot of movies.
2. my mom / have curly hair / have straight hair

   _____
3. Jerry / read books on European history / read books on African culture

   _____
4. Sandy / teach British English / teach American English

   _____

**4b** **Look at the information and write sentences about Emily.**

| Five years ago | Now |
|---|---|
| didn't eat a lot of vegetables | loves carrots and tomatoes |
| listened to pop music | enjoys country music |
| watched scary movies | hates scary movies |
| didn't read a lot of books | reads at least six books a year |

*e.g.* Emily didn't use to eat a lot of vegetables, but now she loves carrots and tomatoes.

**4c** **Which of these things did you use to be afraid of? Which ones are you still afraid of? Check the boxes and then ask your partner.**



| | Me | | My partner | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | I used to be afraid of ... | I'm still afraid of ... | My partner used to be afraid of ... | My partner is still afraid of ... |
| the dark | | | | |
| being alone | | | | |
| flying | | | | |
| high places | | | | |
| giving a speech in public | | | | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **Check (✔) the things you used to like when you were a child.**



_____ P.E. class



_____ painting pictures



_____ music class



_____ ants and other insects

_____

_____

_____

_____

**1b** **What other things did you use to like when you were a child? Write sentences in the box above. Then discuss them with a partner.**

**1c** **Listen and check (✔) the sentences you hear.**

1. _____ I didn't use to like tests.
2. _____ We used to walk to school.
3. _____ I used to hate P.E. class.
4. _____ I used to be on the soccer team.

**1d** **Listen again. What do the girl and the boy say about things in the past and now? Fill in the chart.**

| | In the past | Now |
|---|---|---|
| Girl | I didn't use to like _____. | I don't worry about _____. |
| | We used to wear _____ to school. | We can wear _____ to school. |
| Boy | We used to _____ every day after school. | We _____ all the time. |
| | I used to hate _____. | I _____ P.E. class. |

**1e** **Compare yourself with your partner.**

A: I used to be nervous about tests all the time. What about you?
B: Yes, me too. And I used to ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Li Wen is a 15-year-old boy from the countryside. His parents are working in the city. Look at the title of the passage and the picture below. What problems do you think he might have?**

**2b** **Read the passage and put the sentences [A-D] in the correct places.**

**USING CONTEXT**

Using the sentence context may help you guess and learn the meanings of new words and phrases.

## He Studies Harder Than He Used to

Li Wen is a normal 15-year-old boy from the countryside. He works very hard and does well in school. It is hard to believe that he used to have difficulties in school. When he was a little boy, he seldom caused any problems, and his family spent a lot of time together. _____. His parents moved to the city to look for jobs, and his grandparents came to take care of him. But he missed his parents so much and he often felt lonely and unhappy.

Li Wen's unhappiness began to **influence** his schoolwork. He became less interested in studying. Sometimes he was **absent** from classes and failed his examinations. Finally, Li Wen's parents made the decision to send him to a **boarding school**. However, Li Wen was shy and was not able to make friends quickly in school. He found life there difficult. One day he told his teacher that he wanted to leave the school. _____ and she called his parents. She advised them to talk with their son **in person**. So his parents took a 24-hour train and a 5-hour bus ride to get to Li Wen's school.

_____. "It was exactly what I needed," he said. "Now I understand that even though they are busy, they are always thinking of me. They take pride in everything good that I do."

After that, Li Wen's parents had much more communication with their son than they used to. _____. He has become more outgoing and made some good friends in school. He has even joined the school basketball team and become active in many other activities. "I'm much happier now, and I work even harder than I used to. I know my parents love me and they're always proud of me," says Li Wen. "It's very important for parents to be there for their children."





微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Missing language |
| --- |
| A. They had a long talk |
| B. Now Li Wen has really changed |
| C. However, things began to change a few years ago |
| D. His teacher was worried about him |

**2c** **Read the passage again and underline the problems that Li Wen used to have.**

**2d** **Use clues from the passage to help you guess the meanings of the words in the box.**

| influence | absent | boarding school | in person |
| --- | --- | --- | --- |

**2e** **Complete the passage with the proper forms of the words and phrases in the box.**

be proud of / take pride in  make a decision / decide  miss / be absent from
change / influence  look after / take care of

Li Wen is a 15-year-old boy. He works hard and does well in school. It is hard to believe that he used to have difficulties in school. When his parents moved to the city to work, they could not be at home to _____ him. So he became less interested in studying and _____ classes. Then his parents _____ to send him to a boarding school. He found life there difficult. One day he told his teacher he wanted to leave the school. His teacher advised his parents to talk with their son in person. This conversation _____ his life. He realized that his parents would always love him, and they would _____ everything good that he did. Now he is much happier and more outgoing than he used to be.

**2f** **What do you think Li Wen and his parents talked about in their conversation? Write a conversation and role-play it with your group. Think of the following things:**

- Possible questions Li Wen might ask his parents
- Questions his parents might ask Li Wen
- Possible answers from Li Wen and his parents

**3a** **Write notes about how you have changed in your appearance, personality and hobbies. Then talk with a partner about your changes.**



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write about how you have changed. What did you use to be like? Which change is the most important one, and why?**

Try to write two paragraphs.
Paragraph 1: General introduction about the changes in your life
Paragraph 2: The most important change and how it happened

**How I've Changed!**

My life has changed a lot in the last few years. I used to _____.

Now I'm _____.

The biggest change in my life was _____.

This is the most important change because _____.

## Self Check

**1** **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box.**

silent require absent fail interview take pride in
be proud of in person influence humorous seldom

1. The mother traveled for many hours to return home to talk to her child _____.
2. He used to be a very quiet teenager. He remained _____ most of the time and _____ talked to other people.
3. If you are always _____ from class, you will _____ the examinations.
4. The teacher _____ helping his students win the English competition.
5. Kate's grandparents have had a great _____ on her.
6. That British teacher is very _____. He always tells us interesting jokes.
7. People are usually _____ to give a general self-introduction in a job _____.
8. Tina played very well in the basketball game and her parents _____ her.

**2** **What did you use to be like when you were in primary school? Complete these statements.**

I used to wear _____.
My hair used to be _____.
I used to watch _____.
I used to play _____.
I used to be _____.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 5

Section A

## What are the shirts made of?

**Language Goal:** Talk about what products are made of and where they were made

**1a** **What are these things usually made of? Match them with the materials. More than one answer is possible.**

| Things | | Materials | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. chopsticks | 4. stamp | a. wood | d. paper |
| 2. window | 5. fork | b. gold | e. silk |
| 3. coin | 6. blouse | c. silver | f. glass |




**1b** **Listen and match the products with what they are made of and where they were made.**

| Things | Made of | Made in |
|---|---|---|
| shirts | cotton | Korea |
| chopsticks | silver | Thailand |
| ring | steel | America |

**1c** **Practice the conversation in 1a. Then make conversations using the information in 1b.**

A: This ring looks nice. Is it made of silver?
B: Yes, and it was made in Thailand.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Listen and check (✔) the main topic of Nick and Marcus' conversation.**

_____ the science museum
_____ the art and science fair
_____ environmental protection
_____ a model plane
_____ a beautiful painting
_____ grass and leaves



**2b** **Listen again. Write short answers to the questions.**

1. Where is the art and science fair? _____
2. Do Nick and Marcus have to pay to go? _____
3. What is the model plane made of? _____
4. What is the painting made from? _____

**2c** **Make conversations using the information in 2a and 2b.**

A: What did you see at the art and science fair?
B: I saw ...
A: What is it made of/from?
B: ...

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**



Pam: China is famous for tea, right?
Liu Jun: Yes, both in the past and now.
Pam: Where is tea produced in China?
Liu Jun: Well, in many different areas. For example, Anxi and Hangzhou are widely known for their tea.
Pam: How is tea produced?
Liu Jun: Well, as far as I know, tea plants are grown on the sides of mountains. When the leaves are ready, they are picked by hand and then are sent for processing.
Pam: What happens next?
Liu Jun: The tea is packed and sent to many different countries and places around China.
Pam: It seems that many people all over the world drink Chinese tea.
Liu Jun: Yes, people say that tea is good for both health and business!



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the passage. What two things did Kang Jian want to buy in America? Where were they made?**




## The Difficult Search for American Products in the US

If you go to another country, what kinds of things would you buy? Would you buy a camera in Japan, some beautiful clothes in France, or a watch in Switzerland? No matter what you may buy, you might think **those** products were made in **those** countries. However, you could be wrong. Kang Jian is a 17-year-old student from Shanghai. Last year he went to visit his aunt and uncle in San Francisco. He found **it** interesting that so many products in the local shops were made in China. "I wanted to buy a toy car for my cousin, but even though most of the toys were American brands, **they** were made in China."

Toys are not the only things made in China. "I wanted to buy a pair of basketball shoes," he explains. "But I had to visit five or six stores before finding a pair made in America!" He realized that Americans can hardly avoid buying products made in China. "In fact," he continues, "there were many other things there made in China — footballs, handbags, pet food, mobile phones. Even American flags are made in China!" Kang Jian thinks it's great that China is so good at making these everyday things. However, he hopes that in the future China will also get better at making high-technology products that people can buy in all parts of the world.

**3b** **Read the passage and answer the questions.**

1. Where did Kang Jian go to visit his aunt and uncle?
2. What did he discover in the toy stores?
3. Why did he have to visit many stores before buying a pair of basketball shoes?
4. What did he realize after his shopping experiences?
5. Why do you think so many products in America are made in China? How do you feel about this?

**3c** **Read the passage again and write what the words in bold refer to.**

those (products): _____

those (countries): _____

it: _____

they: _____



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| Are your shirts made of cotton? | Yes, they are. And they were made in the US. |
| What's the model plane made of? | It's made of used wood and glass. |
| Where is tea produced in China? | It's produced in many different areas. |
| How is tea produced? | Tea plants are grown on the sides of mountains. When the leaves are ready, they are picked by hand and then are sent for processing. |
| **Active Voice:** People grow tea in Hangzhou.<br>**Passive Voice:** Tea is grown (by people) in Hangzhou. | |

**4a** **Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.**

1. Children under 18 _____(not allow) to watch this show without their parents.
2. We _____(pay) by the boss on the last Friday of each month.
3. A: What language _____(speak) in Germany?
   B: Most people speak German, but many can speak English, too.
4. Most of the earth's surface _____(cover) by water.
5. The classroom _____(clean) by the students every day.

**4b** **Rewrite the sentences using the passive voice.**

1. Farmers plant the tea on the sides of mountains.
   The tea is planted on the sides of mountains by farmers.
2. This shop uses the best materials to make dresses.
   _____
3. Careless driving causes many traffic accidents.
   _____
4. The postman brings letters and postcards to people's homes.
   _____
5. Our family does not use this silver plate very often.
   _____

**4c** **Ask five classmates about something they are wearing or have in their schoolbags. The list of words below may help you.**

pencil, jacket, sweater, T-shirt, shoes, cap, gloves, ring ...

A: What's your pencil made of?
B: It's made of wood.
A: Where was it made?
B: It was made in Shanghai.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **Do you know how to fly a kite? What are kites made of? Write down some materials used in making kites.**

_____
_____
_____
_____





**1b** **Listen to a conversation between Laura and Zheng Yun and circle the correct answers.**

1. Laura is trying to find out more about _____.
   A. what Zheng Yun did on his vacation
   B. what Zheng Yun thinks about Weifang

2. Zheng Yun tells Laura about _____.
   A. a kite festival
   B. how to make a kite

**1c** **Listen again and write *L* for Laura or *Z* for Zheng Yun.**

1. _____ went on a vacation to Weifang.
2. _____ wants to know more about the kite festival.
3. _____ saw many different kinds of kites at the festival.
4. _____ didn't know that kite flying could be so exciting.
5. _____ wants to learn to fly a kite.

**1d** **Listen again. Fill in the blanks with what you hear.**

1. Weifang is a city in Shandong. It is famous for _____.
2. The international kite festival is held in _____ every year.
3. The competitors at the festival are from _____.
4. There are _____ for the best kites.
5. Some of the kites Zheng Yun saw were made of _____. Some were painted with colorful _____.

**1e** **Role-play a conversation between Laura and Zheng Yun using the information in 1b–1d.**

A: Where did you go on vacation?
B: I went to an international kite festival.
A: That sounds interesting. What did you see there?
B: ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **What do you know about folk or traditional art, like paper cutting? Tell your partner about it.**

**2b** **Read the passage and complete the chart below.**

**MOVING FROM GENERAL TO SPECIFIC**

A general introduction of the topic is usually followed by specific details and examples.

## Beauty in Common Things

Each different part of China has its own special forms of traditional art. These usually try to show the things that are important in life, such as love, beauty and family. The most common things, from paper to clay to bamboo, are turned into objects of beauty.



According to Chinese history, sky lanterns were first used by Zhuge Kongming. He sent them out to ask for help when in trouble. Today, sky lanterns are used at festivals and other celebrations. They are made of bamboo and covered with paper. When the lanterns are lit, they slowly rise into the air like small hot-air balloons for all to see. They are seen as bright symbols of happiness and good wishes.

Paper cutting has been around for over 1,500 years. Paper cutting sounds very easy but it can be difficult to do. The paper, usually red, is folded before it is cut with scissors. The most common pictures are flowers, animals, and things about Chinese history. During the Spring Festival, they are put on windows, doors and walls as symbols of wishes for good luck and a happy new year.





Chinese clay art is famous because the clay pieces are so small but they look very real. The pieces are usually cute children or lively characters from a Chinese fairy tale or historical story. The pieces are carefully shaped by hand from a very special kind of clay and then allowed to air-dry. After drying, they are fired at a very high heat. They are then polished and painted. It takes several weeks to complete everything. These small pieces of clay art show the love that all Chinese people have for life and beauty.

| Traditional art form | Materials used |
|---|---|
| 1. | |
| 2. | |
| 3. | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Read the passage again and answer the questions.**

1. What do traditional Chinese art forms try to show?
2. What were sky lanterns used for before and what are they used for now?
3. What kinds of pictures are usually found on paper cuttings?
4. How do people use paper cuttings during the Spring Festival?
5. What are the steps for making clay art pieces?
6. Which art form do you think is the most interesting? Why?

**2d** **Complete the sentences using the correct forms of the phrases in the box.**

| such as | turn ... into | send out | cover with | rise into | put ... on |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|

1. People used to _____ sky lanterns when they were in trouble. But today, people light the lanterns and watch them _____ the sky with their wishes.
2. The art of paper cutting _____ a simple thing like a piece of paper _____ a beautiful piece of art. People often _____ these art pieces _____ the doors, windows and walls of their homes to celebrate the Spring Festival.
3. To make Chinese clay art, the clay is shaped by hand into things _____ cute children or characters from Chinese fairy tales and stories. They are then _____ paint.

**2e** **Discuss the questions in your group.**

1. Which art form do you think is the easiest? Which is the most difficult? Why?
2. Which art form would you like to learn? Why?

**3a** **What are some special things that your town/city is famous for? These can be food, artwork or any other products. Discuss them with a partner and take notes.**

| | |
|---|---|
| What the product is | |
| What it is made of/from | |
| Who it is made by | |
| Where it is made | |
| What it can do | |
| Why it is special | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write a paragraph about the product. Use your notes in 3a.**

> **Use the following expressions to help you:**
>
> My town/city is famous for ...
> ... is famous in my town/city.
> ... is/are made of/from/with/by/in ...
> ... is/are used for ...
> ... is/are known for ...
> ... is/are special because ...

## Self Check

**1** **List some things you use every day. Write down what they are made of/from and where they were made.**

| Things | Made of/from ... | Made in ... |
|---|---|---|
| | | |

**2** **Use the information above to write full sentences.**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

**3** **Complete the sentences using the correct forms of the words in brackets.**

1. Cheese _____ (make) from milk.
2. Parents and students _____ (invite) to the school concert last night.
3. The underground parking lot _____ (close) at midnight every day.
4. There is a lot of research on how languages _____ (learn).
5. Some classic films _____ (show) at that cinema last week.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 6

Section A

## When was it invented?

**Language Goal:** Talk about the history of inventions

**1a** **Look at the things below. In what order do you think they were invented? Discuss them with your group. Then number them [1–4] (1 = first, 4 = last).**



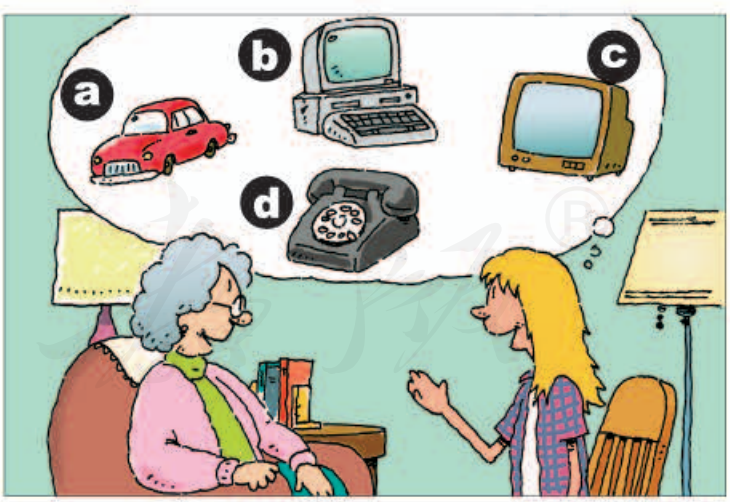






A: I think the TV was invented before the car.
B: Well, I think the TV was invented after the car.

**1b** **Listen and match the inventions with the years.**




_____ 1876
_____ 1885
_____ 1927
_____ 1971

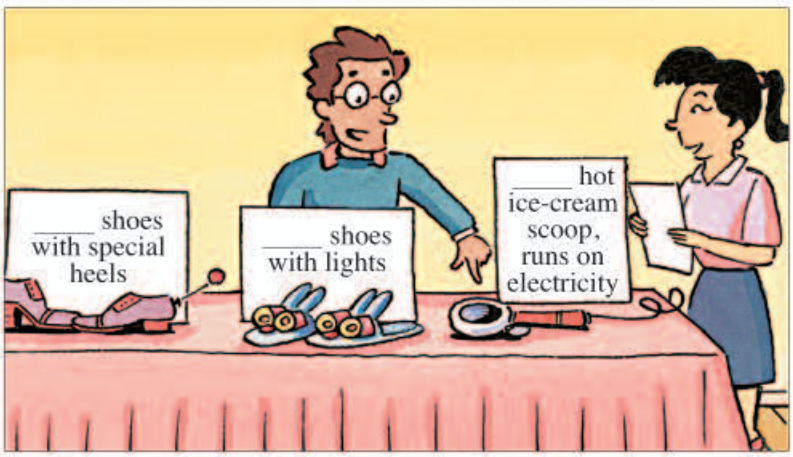
**1c** **Student B, cover the dates. Student A, ask Student B when the things in the picture in 1b were invented. Then change roles and practice again.**

A: When was the telephone invented?
B: I think it was invented in 1876.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Listen and number the inventions [1–3] in the order you hear them.**



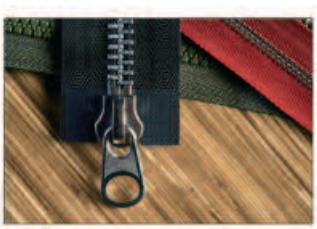

**2b** **Listen again and complete the chart below.**

| Invention | What is it / are they used for? |
|---|---|
| shoes with special heels | _____ the style of the shoes |
| shoes with lights | seeing _____ |
| hot ice-cream scoop | _____ really cold ice-cream |

**2c** **Make conversations using the information in 2b.**

A: What are they used for?
B: They're used for ...

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**



Paul: Hey Roy, the subject for my school project is "Small inventions that changed the world". Can you help me think of an invention?
Roy: With pleasure! Let me think ... hmm ... I know! The zipper!
Paul: The zipper? Is it really such a great invention?
Roy: Think about how often it's used in our daily lives. You can see zippers on dresses, trousers, shoes, bags ... almost everywhere!
Paul: Well, you do seem to have a point ...
Roy: Of course! I thought about it because I saw a website last week. The pioneers of different inventions were listed there. For example, it mentioned that the zipper was invented by Whitcomb Judson in 1893. But at that time, it wasn't used widely.
Paul: Really? So when did it become popular?
Roy: Around 1917.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the passage quickly and match each paragraph with its main idea.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Paragraph 1 | Lu Yu and his book *Cha Jing* |
| Paragraph 2 | How tea spread to other countries |
| Paragraph 3 | How tea was invented by accident |

## An Accidental Invention

Did you know that tea, the most popular drink in the world (after water), was invented by accident? Many people believe that tea was first drunk about 5,000 years ago. It is said that a Chinese ruler called Shen Nong was the first to discover tea as a drink. One day Shen Nong was boiling drinking water over an open fire. Some leaves from a tea plant fell into the water and remained there for some time. It produced a nice smell so he tasted the brown water. It was quite delicious, and so, one of the world's favorite drinks was invented.



A few thousand years later, Lu Yu, "the saint of tea", mentioned Shen Nong in his book *Cha Jing*. The book describes how tea plants were grown and used to make tea. It also discusses where the finest tea leaves were produced and what kinds of water were used.

It is believed that tea was brought to Korea and Japan during the 6th and 7th centuries. In England, tea didn't appear until around 1660, but in less than 100 years, it had become the national drink. The tea trade from China to Western countries took place in the 19th century. This helped to spread the popularity of tea and the tea plant to more places around the world. Even though many people now know about tea culture, the Chinese are without doubt the ones who best understand the nature of tea.

**3b** **Read the passage again and answer the questions.**

1. When was tea first drunk?
2. How was tea invented?
3. Who is called "the saint of tea"?
4. What is *Cha Jing* about?
5. When was tea brought to other countries?

**3c** **Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.**

invent
drink
bring
produce
trade

1. One of the world's favorite drinks was _____ by accident.
2. Tea was first _____ by Shen Nong about 5,000 years ago.
3. A nice smell was _____ when the tea leaves dropped into the hot water.
4. Tea was _____ to Korea and Japan during the 6th and 7th centuries.
5. Tea is now _____ between many different countries.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| When was the zipper invented? | It was invented in 1893. |
| Who was it invented by? | It was invented by Whitcomb Judson. |
| When was tea brought to Korea? | It was brought to Korea during the 6th and 7th centuries. |
| What is the hot ice-cream scoop used for? | It's used for serving really cold ice-cream. |
| **Active Voice:** Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876.<br>**Passive Voice:** The telephone was invented (by Alexander Graham Bell) in 1876. | |

**4a** **Rewrite the sentences using the passive voice.**

1. They sold the fridge at a low price.
   The fridge was sold at a low price.
2. Somebody stole my camera from my hotel room.
   _____
3. Where did you take these photos?
   _____
4. Our parents advised us not to go out alone.
   _____
5. Different writers translated the book into different languages.
   _____

**4b** **Complete the sentences with the correct forms of the verbs in the box.**

| | |
|---|---|
| eat | lock |
| like | ring |
| invite | break |
| tell | bring |

1. You _____ to the party last night, weren't you? Why didn't you go?
2. The earthquake happened all of a sudden, but luckily the villagers _____ to a safe place.
3. The door _____ when we arrived, so we _____ the bell.
4. The students _____ not to eat or drink in class, but Ruby _____ the rule when she started eating a biscuit in science class.
5. The cookies _____ by the hungry kids in less than 20 minutes, and they really _____ them.

**4c** **Decide whether active or passive forms should be used in these sentences. Write the correct forms in the blanks.**

The telephone _____ (invent) by Alexander Graham Bell. He _____ (born) in 1847. Mr. Bell _____ (work) on the invention of the telephone with Thomas Watson. In 1875, Mr. Bell _____ (learn) how to send musical notes through an instrument similar to a telephone. Finally, the telephone _____ (invent) in 1876. The first sentence that _____ (say) on the telephone by Mr. Bell was "Mr. Watson, come here; I want to see you." Today the telephone _____ (use) around the world.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **The words in the box describe how food can taste. Write them under the correct pictures. Some pictures have more than one word.**






| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sweet crispy salty sour | crispy | | | |

**1b** **Write the name of a different food after each word.**

sweet banana crispy _____ salty _____ sour _____

**1c** **Listen and circle *T* for true or *F* for false.**

1. Potato chips were invented by mistake. (T) F
2. They were invented in 1863. T F
3. The customer thought the potatoes were not thin enough. T F
4. The customer said they were not salty enough. T F
5. George wanted to make the customer happy. T F
6. The customer was happy in the end. T F




**1d** **Listen again. Complete the sentences.**

### The History of Potato Chips

Do you know how potato chips were invented? Potato chips _____ by a cook called George Crum. They were invented in _____. George Crum cut the potatoes really, really _____ and then cooked them for a long time until they were _____. Finally he put lots of salt on them so they were _____.

**1e** **Make a conversation about the invention of potato chips. Use the information in 1c and 1d.**

A: Did you know potato chips were invented by mistake?
B: Wow, I didn't know that. Who invented them?
A: ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Do you like basketball? Do you watch basketball games? How much do you know about this sport? Discuss the sport with your partner and share your ideas with the class.**

**2b** **Read the passage quickly. What is the main idea of each paragraph?**

**MIND-MAPPING**

Changing the information you read into a mind map may help you remember it more easily.

## Do You Know When Basketball Was Invented?

Basketball is a much-loved and active sport that is enjoyed by many for fun and exercise. It is over 100 years old and is played by more than 100 million people in over 200 countries. It is believed that the first basketball game in history was played on December 21, 1891. Then in 1936 in Berlin, it became an event at the Olympics.

Basketball was invented by a Canadian doctor named James Naismith, who was born in 1861. When he was a college teacher, he was asked to think of a game that could be played in the winter. Dr. Naismith created a game to be played inside on a hard floor. Dr. Naismith divided the men in his class into two teams and taught them to play his new game. Players on the same team must work together to get the ball in the other team's basket. At the same time, they need to stop the competing team from getting the ball into their own basket.

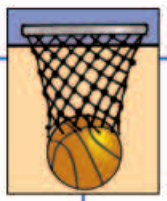
Today, the popularity of basketball has risen around the world, with many young people dreaming of becoming famous players. In China, you can sometimes see people playing basketball in parks, schools and even factories. Basketball has not only become a popular sport to play, but it has also become a popular sport to watch. Although America's NBA games are the most famous, the CBA games are becoming more popular in China. The number of foreign players, including Chinese players, in the NBA has increased. There are also more and more foreign players in the CBA. Many young people look up to these basketball heroes and want to become like them. These stars encourage young people to work hard to achieve their dreams.





微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Complete the mind map with the information in the passage. What else can you add to the mind map?**



**Game**

- played inside on a hard _____
- _____ teams
- get _____ into other team's _____

**Development**

- invented by _____
- first game on _____
- became Olympic event in _____ in the year _____
- most famous games: _____
- popular games in China: _____

**Popularity**

- played by _____ people
- over _____ countries

**2d** **Use the mind map to summarize what you and your partner remember about the development of basketball. Use the following questions to help you.**

1. Who invented basketball and how is it played?
2. When was the first basketball game in history played?
3. Why were the Berlin Olympics important for basketball?
4. What are the professional basketball groups in America and China?
5. How popular is basketball?

**2e** **What do you think of famous basketball players? Make a list of good and difficult things about being a famous basketball player.**

**3a** **Think of something that you do not like to do. Then think of an invention that could help you. Make notes.**

Problem: quickly taking notes in class

New invention: a special pen

What it is used for: _____



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Imagine you are a business person. Write a description of your new invention. Try to sell the invention to the class.**

This special pen was invented by Liu Jie. It has three colors and is used for ...

## Self Check

**1** **Complete the passage with the correct forms of the words in the box.**

invent doubt mention website all of a sudden

It is often difficult to decide on the inventor of certain inventions. This is because sometimes a few people may _____ things which are nearly the same. It's hard to tell who came up with the idea first. Some inventions can also lead to other inventions _____. So some people _____ whether the inventor came up with the idea himself or herself. They think that the inventor used someone else's idea to create his or her invention. That is why books or _____ usually _____ more than one inventor when giving information about inventions.

**2** **Rewrite these sentences using the passive voice.**

1. Someone stole my watch.
   _____
2. They used five eggs to make this big cake.
   _____
3. When did they invent the personal computer?
   _____
4. They asked us not to run in the hallway.
   _____
5. Someone took the video back to the store.
   _____

**3** **Find out information about an invention you would like to know more about and write sentences below.**

Invention: _____
When: _____
Who: _____
Purpose: _____



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 7

Section A

## Teenagers should be allowed to choose their own clothes.

**Language Goals:**
Talk about what you are allowed to do;
Agree and disagree

**1a** **Read the statements below. Circle *A* for agree or *D* for disagree.**




| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Teenagers should not be allowed to smoke. | A | D |
| 2. Sixteen-year-olds should be allowed to drive. | A | D |
| 3. Students should not be allowed to have part-time jobs. | A | D |
| 4. Sixteen-year-olds should be allowed to get their ears pierced. | A | D |
| 5. Teenagers should be allowed to choose their own clothes. | A | D |

**1b** **Listen and circle *T* for true or *F* for false.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Anna can go to the shopping center by bus. | T | F |
| 2. Anna wants to get her ears pierced. | T | F |
| 3. Anna wants to choose her own clothes. | T | F |

**1c** **Look at the statements in 1a and make conversations.**

A: I don't think sixteen-year-olds should be allowed to drive.
B: I agree. They aren't serious enough.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **What does Molly think of Kathy's statements? Listen and circle *A* for Agree, *D* for Disagree or *DK* for Don't Know.**



| Kathy | Molly | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1. Sixteen-year-olds should not be allowed to work at night. | A | D | DK |
| 2. Larry shouldn't work every night. | A | D | DK |
| 3. He should cut his hair. | A | D | DK |
| 4. He should stop wearing that silly earring. | A | D | DK |
| 5. He doesn't seem to have many friends. | A | D | DK |

**2b** **Listen again. What are Kathy's and Molly's reasons? Number their reasons in the correct order.**

_____ It looks cool.
_____ Young people need to sleep.
_____ He needs to spend time with friends.
_____ He needs time to do homework.
_____ It doesn't look clean.

**2c** **Make a list of things teenagers should and should not be allowed to do. Discuss your list with your partner.**

A: Do you think teenagers should ...?
B: Yes, I ... / No, I ...

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**

Sandy: I'm really excited about seeing the famous paintings by Picasso.
Wu Lan: Me, too! I'm glad Mr. Smith chose the art museum for our school trip this year.
Sandy: I'm going to bring my new camera to take lots of photos!
Wu Lan: Oh, no. Mr. Smith says we must not take photos. It's not allowed in the museum.
Sandy: That's too bad! Do you think we may be allowed to take photos if we don't use a flash?
Wu Lan: Hmm ... I think they just want to protect the paintings. So if you don't use a flash, then it may be OK.
Sandy: Yeah. I think we should be allowed to do that. I'll bring my camera anyway.





微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the poem aloud and discuss what the title means with your partner.**

## Mom Knows Best

*When I was a tiny baby crying all night, my mom sang to me and stayed by my side.*
*When I was tired and hungry, she gave me food and warm arms to sleep in.*
*When I was two running through the field, she made sure I was safe and kept me from danger.*
*When I fell and hurt myself, she gave me a hug and lifted me up.*

*When I was seven coughing badly, she said no ice-cream for me.*
*But I talked back loudly, "I should be allowed to eat some! Give it to me now!"*
*When I was nine watching scary movies, she said it'd give me awful dreams.*
*But I shouted back angrily, "I should be allowed to watch it! I'm not a baby!"*

*When I was a teen going out with friends, she said, "Please be back by ten!"*
*But I talked back again — "I should not be told what to do! I'm seventeen now!"*



*Now I'm an adult, thinking back to those times.*
*I coughed for days after eating that ice-cream*
*And had scary dreams after watching that film.*
*I was late for school from staying out past ten.*
*I regret talking back, not listening to Mom.*
*Mom knows best, and for me she wanted only the best!*

**3b** **Read the poem again and answer the questions.**

1. What did the mom do when the writer was a baby and a small child?
2. Why do you think the writer talked back to his mom when he was seven and nine years old?
3. How did the writer feel when he was a teenager and his mom said "Please be back by ten"?
4. After reading the whole poem, how do you think the writer feels about his mom?

**3c** **Think about a time you did something even though your mom or dad told you not to do it. Share your story with your partner.**



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| I don't think sixteen-year-olds should be allowed to drive. | I agree. They aren't serious enough. |
| Do you think teenagers should be encouraged to make their own decisions? | No, I don't agree with this. Teenagers are too young to make their own decisions. |
| Teenagers should not be allowed to have part-time jobs. | I disagree. They can learn a lot from working. |
| Do you think we may be allowed to take photos if we don't use a flash? | If you don't use a flash, then it may be OK. |

**4a** **Rewrite the sentences according to the example.**

1. You must clean your bedroom every day.
   Your bedroom must be cleaned every day.
2. I will do the housework in the afternoon.
   The housework will be done in the afternoon.
3. Parents will encourage their children to do social work for their community.
   Children _____.
4. Do you think we must keep teenagers away from the Internet?
   Do you think teenagers _____?
5. Parents should give teenagers chances to make their own decisions.
   Teenagers _____.

**4b** **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in brackets.**

Should teenagers _____ (ask) to move out when they start working? In many Western countries, teenagers _____ (allow) to move out at eighteen. Their parents believe that they should be educated to take care of themselves from a young age. This way, when they _____ (start) working they can manage their own lives. However, in most Asian societies, it is not common for teenagers to _____ (move) out. Chinese parents believe that it is better for children to live with parents who can _____ (take) care of them. But the young should then look after their parents as they get older. That is why many Chinese adults _____ (continue) to live with their parents.

**4c** **You and your friend are starting an English club. Make a list of rules about what should and should not be allowed.**

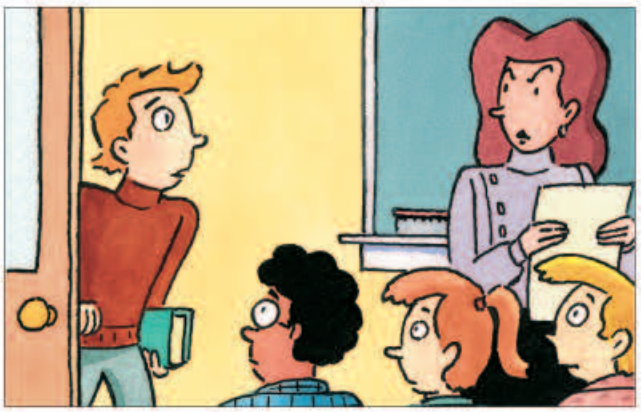
A: Members should be allowed to use dictionaries.
B: Yes, but they should only use English-English dictionaries.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **Read the questions. How often do you do these things? Write *A* for always, *U* for usually, *S* for sometimes and *N* for never. Then talk with a partner about other things you do.**



| Do you ever ... | |
|---|---|
| 1. get to class late? | ____ |
| 2. study with friends? | ____ |
| 3. finish a test early? | ____ |
| 4. worry about failing a test? | ____ |
| 5. ... | |

**1b** **Talk about your answers in 1a.**

A: Do you ever get to class late?
B: Yes, I sometimes get to class late.

**1c** **Listen and circle the things in 1a that Peter talks about.**

**1d** **Listen again. Match these sentence parts.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 1. Peter is going to ... | c | a. take the test. |
| 2. He isn't allowed to ... | ____ | b. pass the test. |
| 3. Peter wasn't allowed to ... | ____ | c. fail a math test. |
| 4. He could ... | ____ | d. take the test later. |
| 5. He should be allowed to ... | ____ | e. get to class late. |

**1e** **Read the statements. Then discuss them with your group.**

1. Peter should be allowed to take the test later.
2. Students need strict rules.
3. Parents should not be too strict with teenagers.

A: I think Peter should ...
B: I don't agree.
C: I think ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Discuss the questions in your groups.**

Are you allowed to make your own decisions at home? What kinds of decisions?

**2b** **First, look at the title of the passage. Answer "yes" or "no". Find out how many in your group agree with you. Then read the passage. Does your answer change?**

**LEARNING ACTIVELY**

When you learn any new language, actively use it in new sentences of your own.

## Should I Be Allowed to Make My Own Decisions?

Many teenagers have hobbies. But sometimes these can get in the way of their schoolwork, and parents might worry about their success at school. Teenagers often think they should be allowed to practice their hobbies as much as they want. Do you agree?



Liu Yu, a fifteen-year-old boy from Shandong, is a running star. He is on his school team and has always wanted to be a professional runner when he grows up. However, his parents won't allow him to train so much. "Of course we want to see him achieve his dreams," says Mr. Liu. "And we know how much he loves running. My wife and I have supported every one of his races. We have nothing against running! But we think our son needs to think about other possible jobs. He's getting older now, so he needs to think about what will happen if he doesn't end up as a professional runner."

Liu Yu doesn't really agree. "Well, I think I should be allowed to decide for myself," he says. "My parents have always taught me how important it is to work hard at school and enter university. I understand this, but I'm serious about running. It's the only thing I've ever wanted to do."

His parents believe that Liu Yu should study hard in the evenings so they don't allow him to practice running at night. "Maybe he thinks it's too strict or unfair," says Mrs. Liu. "But we think we're doing the right thing. He needs to spend more time on his homework because it is difficult to become a professional sports star."

But Liu Yu still disagrees. "I know my parents care about me. They always talk about what will happen if I don't succeed. But I will! I'm a quick runner! I think I should be allowed to make this choice myself. Only then will I have a chance to achieve my dream."



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Read the passage again and answer the questions.**

1. What is Liu Yu's hobby?
2. What does Liu Yu want to be when he grows up?
3. Why do Liu Yu's parents not allow Liu Yu to practice his hobby at night?
4. Do you think Liu Yu should be allowed to practice his hobby as much as he wants? Why or why not?

**2d** **Look in the passage for the words in bold. Then use them to complete sentences of your own.**

1. My parents **worry about** _____.
2. My parents have always taught me **how important it is to** _____.
3. I am **serious about** _____.
4. I think it is **unfair** _____.
5. I have **always wanted to be** _____.
6. My parents **have nothing against** _____.
7. I need to think about **what will happen if** _____.
8. I need to **spend more time on** _____.

**2e** **Discuss the questions with a partner. Use the information in the passage to support your opinion.**

What is your dream job? Do your parents support your dream?

**3a** **With a partner, discuss some rules at home that you agree or disagree with. Make some notes in the chart.**

| Rule | Why you agree or disagree with it | How you think the rule should be changed |
|---|---|---|
| can't play computer games<br>can't watch TV | | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write a diary entry explaining which rule(s) you do not agree with at home and how you think the rule(s) should be changed.**

Use the following expressions to help you:

- I do not agree with ...
- I think I should be allowed to ...
- I would like to ...
- I could ... if I ...

## Self Check

**1** **Match the words in the two columns and choose five phrases to make sentences.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| take | shopping | _____ |
| do | photos | _____ |
| get | my dream | _____ |
| achieve | ears pierced | _____ |
| make | part-time work | _____ |
| go | a choice | _____ |

**2** **Complete the sentences using the correct forms of the words in brackets. Translate them into Chinese.**

1. No matter how many difficulties we have, I believe all problems can _____ (solve) in the end.
2. Mobile phones should _____ (keep) off during the meeting.
3. Teenagers under eighteen must _____ (not allow) to smoke or drink.
4. Many parents think going to school must _____ (put) first, so teenagers should _____ (not encourage) to work part-time.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 8

Section A

Language Goal: Make inferences

## It must belong to Carla.

**1a** **Look at the picture. Write the things you see in the correct columns in the chart.**

| Clothing | Fun things | Kitchen things |
|---|---|---|
| hat | volleyball | plate |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

**1b** **Listen and match each person with a thing and a reason.**




| Person | Thing | Reason |
|---|---|---|
| Jane's little brother | volleyball | J. K. Rowling is her favorite writer. |
| Mary | toy truck | She loves volleyball. |
| Carla | magazine | He was the only little kid at the picnic. |
| Deng Wen | book | She always listens to pop music. |
| Grace | CD | He loves rabbits. |

**1c** **Practice the conversation in the picture above. Then make conversations using the information in 1b.**

A: Whose book is this?
B: It must be Mary's. J. K. Rowling is her favorite writer.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Bob and Anna found a schoolbag at the park. Listen and write down the things in the schoolbag.**

**Things in the schoolbag**

1. T-shirt
2. _____
3. _____

**2b** **Listen again. Fill in the blanks.**

1. The person _____ go to our school.
2. The person _____ be a boy.
3. It _____ be Mei's hair band.
4. The hair band _____ belong to Linda.
5. It _____ be Linda's schoolbag.

*Use "**must**" to show that you think something is probably true.*

*Use "**might**" or "**could**" to show that you think something is possibly true.*

*Use "**can't**" to show that you are almost sure something is not true.*

**2c** **Make conversations using the information in 2a and 2b.**

A: Look! There's a schoolbag here.
B: What's inside?
A: There's a T-shirt, ...

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**



Linda: Mom, I'm really worried.
Mom: Why? What's wrong?
Linda: I can't find my schoolbag.
Mom: Well, where did you last put it?
Linda: I can't remember! I attended a concert yesterday so it might still be in the music hall.
Mom: Do you have anything valuable in your schoolbag?
Linda: No, just my books, my pink hair band and some tennis balls.
Mom: So it can't be stolen.
Linda: Oh, wait! I went to a picnic after the concert. I remember I had my schoolbag with me at the picnic.
Mom: So could it still be at the park?
Linda: Yes. I left early, before the rest of my friends. I think somebody must have picked it up. I'll call them now to check if anybody has it.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the article and decide which might be the best title.**

A. A Small and Quiet Town
B. Strange Happenings in My Town
C. Animals in Our Neighborhood

We live in a small town and almost everyone knows each other. It used to be very quiet. Nothing much ever happened around here. However, these days, something unusual is happening in our town. Victor, a teacher at my school, is really nervous. When he was interviewed by the town newspaper, he said, "Every night we hear strange noises outside our window. My wife thinks that it could be an animal, but my friends and I think it must be teenagers having fun. My parents called the policemen, but they couldn't find anything strange. They think it might be the wind. I don't think so!"

Victor's next-door neighbor Helen is worried, too. "At first, I thought that it might be a dog, but I couldn't see a dog or anything else, either. So I guess it can't be a dog. But then, what could it be?" One woman in the area saw something running away, but it was dark so she is not sure. "I think it was too big to be a dog," she said. "Maybe it was a bear or a wolf."



Everyone in our town is feeling uneasy, and everyone has his or her own ideas. There must be something visiting the homes in our neighborhood, but what is it? We have no idea. Most people hope that this animal or person will simply go away, but I do not think that is going to happen. The noise-maker is having too much fun creating fear in the neighborhood.

**3b** **Read the article again and find words to match the meanings.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| nervous or worried | _____ | area where people live | _____ |
| young people | _____ | animal like a very large dog | _____ |
| person in the next house | _____ | person who makes noise | _____ |

**3c** **Read the article carefully and write what people think about the strange noises.**

| Who gave opinions? | What are the opinions? |
|---|---|
| Victor's wife | She thinks that it could be an animal. |
| Victor and his friends | |
| The policemen | |
| Helen | |
| One woman in the area | |
| The writer himself | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| Whose volleyball is this? | It must be Carla's. She loves volleyball. |
| Whose hair band is this? | It could be Mei's hair band. Or it might belong to Linda. They both have long hair. |
| What did you see that night? | I'm not sure, but it can't be a dog. It was bigger. I think it might be a bear or a wolf. |

**4a** **Choose the best way to complete each sentence using the words in brackets.**

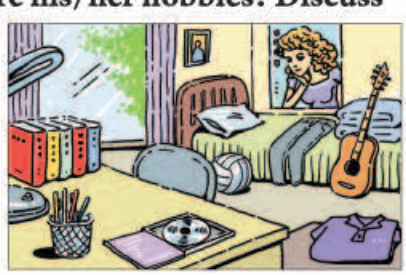
1. A: Where's Jean?
   B: I'm not sure. She _____ (is / might be / must be) in the laboratory.
2. A: Everyone is going to the pool after school.
   B: Really? It _____ (must be / can't be / could be) hot outdoors.
3. A: That's the phone.
   B: Hmm. I wonder who it _____ (must be / could be / should be).
4. A: I wonder if these are Jim's glasses.
   B: They _____ (can't be / might be / could be) his. He doesn't wear glasses.
5. A: I hear water running in the bathroom.
   B: It _____ (could be / must be / can't be) Carla. She was thinking of taking a shower.

**4b** **Complete these responses.**

1. A: Many people are wearing coats.
   B: The weather must be _____.
2. A: Sally has been coughing a lot.
   B: She might be _____.
3. A: This restaurant is always very crowded.
   B: The food _____.
4. A: Whenever I try to read this book, I feel sleepy.
   B: It can't _____.

**4c** **Look at this picture of a room. How much can you tell about the person who lives here? Is it a boy or a girl? What are his/her hobbies? Discuss your ideas with a partner.**

A: It could be a girl's room because it's very tidy.
B: I guess so. But it might be a boy's room because the clothes look like boys' clothes.



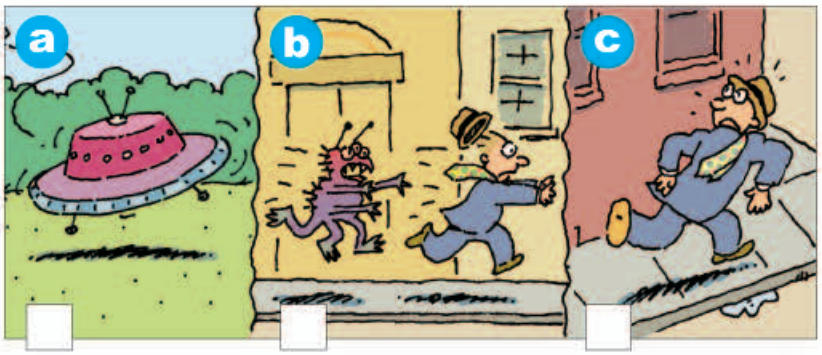


微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **Look at the pictures. Then use the words in the box to write a sentence about each picture.**

| land | man | UFO | run | alien | run after |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|




a. A UFO is landing.

b. _____

c. _____

**1b** **Listen and number the pictures [1–3] in 1a. Then write two or three sentences to finish the story.**

_____

_____

_____

**1c** **Listen again. Complete the sentences.**

| They see ... | The man says ... | The woman says ... |
|---|---|---|
| 1. a man running | he might be _____ | he could be _____ |
| 2. something in the sky | it could be _____ | it must be _____ |
| 3. something strange | it must be _____ | I must be _____ |
| 4. a woman with a camera | she could be _____ | they must be _____ |

**1d** **Role-play a conversation between the man and the woman.**

A: Why do you think the man is running?
B: He could be running for exercise.
A: No, he's wearing a suit. He might be running to catch a bus to work.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Match each linking word or phrase with its purpose.**

| Linking word or phrase | Purpose of linking word or phrase |
|---|---|
| so | expressing a difference |
| as, because, since | giving a choice |
| but, however, though | expressing a result |
| not only ... but also | expressing two things happening at the same time |
| or | giving reasons |
| when, while | adding information |

**2b** **Read the article below and underline the linking words and phrases. Do you think you have made correct matches in 2a?**

**IDENTIFYING LINKING LANGUAGE**

Identifying conjunctions or phrases that link ideas together will help you understand what you read.

## Stonehenge — Can Anyone Explain Why It Is There?

Stonehenge, a rock circle, is not only one of Britain's most famous historical places but also one of its greatest mysteries. Every year it receives more than 750,000 visitors. People like to go to this place especially in June as they want to see the sun rising on the longest day of the year.

For many years, historians believed Stonehenge was a temple where ancient leaders tried to communicate with the gods. However, historian Paul Stoker thinks this can't be true because Stonehenge was built so many centuries ago. "The leaders arrived in England much later," he points out.

Another popular idea is that Stonehenge might be a kind of calendar. The large stones were put together in a certain way. On midsummer's morning, the sun shines directly into the center of the stones. Other people believe the stones have a medical purpose. They think the stones can prevent illness and keep people healthy. "As you walk there, you can feel the energy from your feet move up your body," said one visitor. No one is sure what Stonehenge was used for, but most agree that the position of the stones must be for a special purpose. Some think it might be a burial place or a place to honor ancestors. Others think it was built to celebrate a victory over an enemy.

Stonehenge was built slowly over a long period of time. Most historians believe it must be almost 5,000 years old. One of the greatest mysteries is how it was built because the stones are so big and heavy. In 2001, a group of English volunteers tried to build another Stonehenge, but they couldn't. "We don't really know who built Stonehenge," says Paul Stoker. "And perhaps we might never know, but we do know they must have been hard-working — and great planners!"





微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Read the article again and complete the chart.**

| Mysteries about Stonehenge | What Stonehenge might have been used for ... |
|---|---|
| Who built it? | |

**2d** **Complete the sentences with the correct linking words.**

1. Midsummer day is in June _____ a lot of people go to Stonehenge during this month.
2. The sun shines straight into the center of Stonehenge _____ the stones were put in a special position.
3. Some people think the rocks can _____ stop people from becoming ill _____ keep them healthy.
4. We don't know who built Stonehenge _____ how it was built.
5. Historians think Stonehenge was built about 5,000 years ago; _____, they are not sure.

**2e** **Can you think of any other mysteries, either in China or another part of the world, that are similar to Stonehenge? What do you know about these mysteries? What is mysterious about them? Discuss them with your group.**

**3a** **Read through the article in 3a on page 59 again. What do you think the noises could be? List all your ideas. See who in your group can come up with the most imaginative explanation.**

| What could the noises be? | Why do you think so? |
|---|---|
| | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Look at this newspaper headline and finish the article about the strange happenings.**

### No More Mystery in the Neighborhood

Last week, in a quiet neighborhood, something strange happened ...

We now know what was happening in the neighborhood ...

Now the mystery is solved. People in the neighborhood ...

**Writing tips**

**First part:** background information about the mystery

**Second part:** how the mystery was solved

**Third part:** how the people in the neighborhood now feel

## Self Check

**1** **Fill in the blanks with *must*, *might* or *can't*.**

1. That bright light _____ be a UFO — there's no such thing!
2. I'm still waiting for the bus, so I _____ be a bit late for the party.
3. That sweater _____ be Carla's. She's the only one who wears such colorful clothes.
4. Tony _____ want to go to the concert. He likes music, but I'm not sure if he likes rock music.
5. The person you saw at the supermarket _____ be Susan. I just talked to her on the phone, and she's at work right now.

**2** **Look at the chart and write sentences for the things below.**

| Name | Likes | Dislikes |
|---|---|---|
| Jessica | take photos | run |
| Todd | play the piano | eat sweet food |
| Mike | play tennis | watch movies |
| Annie | read | cook |

1. DVD It can't be Mike's. He doesn't like to watch movies.
2. bowl of ice-cream _____
3. camera _____
4. cookbook _____
5. tennis ball _____
6. running shoes _____



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 9

Section A

## I like music that I can dance to.

Language Goal: Express preferences

**1a** **What kind of music do you like? Look at the picture and circle the sentences you agree with. Then write your own sentence.**

**Your sentence:** I like music that _____.




**1b** **Listen and check (✔) the kinds of music Tony and Betty like.**

| | Music that I can dance to | Music that has great lyrics | Music that I can sing along with |
|---|---|---|---|
| Tony | | | |
| Betty | | | |

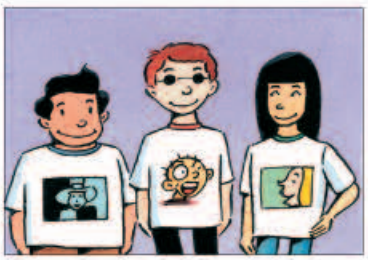
**1c** **Make conversations about the music that you like.**

A: What kind of music do you like?
B: I like music that I can sing along with. What about you?
A: I prefer music that has great lyrics.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## 2a Listen and circle *T* for true or *F* for false.



1. Carmen likes musicians who play different kinds of music. T F
2. Xu Fei likes the Australian singer Dan Dervish. T F
3. Carmen likes electronic music that's loud. T F
4. Xu Fei prefers groups that play quiet and slow songs. T F

## 2b Listen again. Complete the sentences.

| | |
|---|---|
| Carmen says | 1. I really love Dan Dervish. I like musicians _____.<br>2. The Modern are really great. I love electronic music _____. |
| Xu Fei says | 3. I like musicians _____.<br>4. I think The Modern are too noisy. I prefer groups _____. |

## 2c Make conversations using the information in 2a and 2b.

A: Does Xu Fei like The Modern?
B: No, he doesn't. He prefers ...

## 2d Role-play the conversation.

Jill: What are you doing this weekend, Scott?
Scott: Not much. I suppose I'll just listen to this new CD I bought.
Jill: Oh, what CD is this?
Scott: Well, it's all music. There's no singing. I like smooth music that helps me relax after a long week at work.
Jill: Sounds nice. Well, if you have spare time, do you want to watch a movie with me? The director is really famous.
Scott: Hmm, depends which movie. I only like movies that are funny. I just want to laugh and not think too much. You know what I mean?
Jill: Oh, in that case, I'll ask someone who likes serious movies.
Scott: What's the movie about?
Jill: It's about World War II. I prefer movies that give me something to think about.





微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the passage. Underline the different kinds of movies and circle the movie names.**

## What Do You Feel Like Watching Today?

While some people stick to only one kind of movie, I like to watch different kinds depending on how I feel that day.

When I'm down or tired, I prefer movies that can cheer me up. Comedies like *Men in Black* or cartoons like *Kung Fu Panda* have funny dialog and usually have a happy ending. The characters may not be perfect, but they try their best to solve their problems. After I watch them, my problems suddenly seem less serious and I feel much better again. Laughing for two hours is a good way to relax!

I don't watch dramas or documentaries when I'm sad or tired. Dramas like *Titanic* make me feel even sadder. Documentaries like *March of the Penguins* which provide plenty of information about a certain subject can be interesting, but when I'm tired I don't want to think too much. I don't mind action movies like *Spider-Man* when I'm too tired to think. I can just shut off my brain, sit back and enjoy watching an exciting superhero who always saves the world just in time.



Once in a while, I like to watch movies that are scary. They can be fun, but I'm too scared to watch them alone. I always bring a friend who isn't afraid of these kinds of movies, and it doesn't feel so scary anymore.

**3b** **Read the passage again and answer the questions.**

1. How does the writer describe each kind of movie?
2. What kinds of movies does the writer prefer to watch when he or she is sad or tired?
3. How does the writer feel after watching these movies?
4. Does the writer like scary movies? When does he or she watch them?

**3c** **What kinds of movies do you like to watch? Complete the chart.**

| When I'm ... | I like/prefer to watch movies that/which ... | Examples (movie names) |
|---|---|---|
| happy | | |
| sad | | |
| tired | | |
| bored | | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

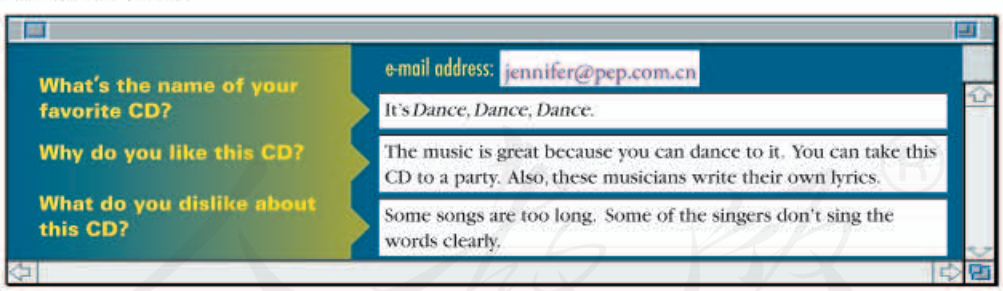
| | |
|---|---|
| What kind of music do you like? | I love music that/which I can sing along with. |
| What kind of groups does Xu Fei like? | He prefers groups that/which play quiet and slow songs. |
| What kind of movies do you like? | I prefer movies that/which give me something to think about. |
| What kind of musicians does Carmen like? | She likes musicians who play different kinds of music. |

**4a** **Choose words from the different columns to make sentences.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| I/You/ He/She/ We/They | like(s)/ love(s)/ prefer(s) | food/clothes/ people/music/ actors/singers/ movies | that/ which/ who | is/are | funny/comfortable/ inexpensive/slow/ sweet/salty/loud/ interesting/ intelligent |

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____

**4b** **Read Jennifer's CD review. Then complete the sentences using *that*, *which* or *who*.**






1. It's the kind of music _____
2. It's a CD _____
3. She likes musicians _____
4. She doesn't like the songs _____
5. She likes singers _____

**4c** **Make conversations about the kind of things you like and dislike.**

A: What kind of food do you enjoy?
B: I enjoy food that is sweet.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **Fill in the chart. Write names of your favorite book, movie and band.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Movie | |
| Book | |
| Band | |

**1b** **Listen and write the three things that Michael likes in the first column of the chart.**

| What Michael likes | Why he likes it |
|---|---|
| jacket | He likes clothes that are unusual. |
| | He likes writers _____. |
| | He likes movies _____. |




**1c** **Listen again. Write why Michael likes each thing in the second column of the chart in 1b.**

**1d** **Discuss your favorite things in 1a with your group. Say why you like each thing.**

A: I like movies that are sad. I love *Titanic*.
B: Oh, I don't. I like movies that are scary. I really like ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **How many Chinese musical instruments do you know about? Do you know any famous pieces of music that are played on these instruments? Make a list with your partner.**

**2b** **Read the passage and answer the questions.**

1. Which musician does the passage mainly talk about?
2. What is the name of his most famous piece of music?
3. How does the writer feel about this piece of music?

**NOTING SUPPORTING DETAILS**

Supporting details can be examples, reasons, opinions or other detailed information in each paragraph.

## Sad but Beautiful

Last night one of my Chinese friends took me to a concert of Chinese folk music. The piece which was played on the *erhu* especially moved me. The music was strangely beautiful, but under the beauty I sensed a strong sadness and pain. The piece had a simple name, *Erquan Yingyue* (*Moon Reflected on Second Spring*), but it was one of the most moving pieces of music that I've ever heard. The *erhu* sounded so sad that I almost cried along with it as I listened. Later I looked up the history of *Erquan Yingyue*, and I began to understand the sadness in the music.

The music was written by Abing, a folk musician who was born in the city of Wuxi in 1893. His mother died when he was very young. Abing's father taught him to play many musical instruments, such as the drums, *dizi* and *erhu*, and by age 17, Abing was known for his musical ability. However, after his father died, Abing's life grew worse. He was very poor. Not only that, he developed a serious illness and became blind. For several years, he had no home. He lived on the streets and played music to make money. Even after Abing got married and had a home again, he continued to sing and play on the streets. He performed in this way for many years.

Abing's amazing musical skills made him very popular during his lifetime. By the end of his life, he could play over 600 pieces of music. Many of these were written by Abing himself. It is a pity that only six pieces of music in total were recorded for the future world to hear, but his popularity continues to this day. Today, Abing's *Erquan Yingyue* is a piece which all the great *erhu* masters play and praise. It has become one of China's national treasures. Its sad beauty not only paints a picture of Abing's own life but also makes people recall their deepest wounds from their own sad or painful experiences.





微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Read the passage again and use suitable words to complete the main idea of each paragraph. Then list the supporting details in each paragraph.**

| Paragraph | Main idea | Supporting details |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | I was _____ by a piece of music named *Erquan Yingyue*. | The music was strangely beautiful ... |
| 2 | Abing lived a very _____ life. | |
| 3 | Abing's musical skills made him very _____. | |

**2d** **Circle *that* or *who* and fill in the blanks with the words in the box.**

pain
wounds
sense
pity
praise

Abing played music (that/who) could touch the hearts of people. When we listen to his music, we can _____ both the beauty and the sadness in it. It makes us think about the _____ and _____ (that/who) we have experienced in the past. For this reason, many people _____ him as the musician who has greatly influenced *erhu* music. So it is really a _____ that not many pieces of his music were recorded.

**2e** **Student A is a foreign visitor who is interested in Abing and his music. Student B is a Chinese student who knows about Abing. Use the information in the passage to make a conversation.**

A: What kind of musical instruments did Abing play?
B: He could play many instruments, but he is best known for playing the *erhu*.

**3a** **What kind of music or movies do you like best? What is your favorite song/movie? Make notes in the chart below.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Favorite kind of music/movie | |
| Why I like this kind of music/movie | |
| Favorite song/movie | |
| Why I like this song/movie | |
| How this song/movie makes me feel | |
| Why I think others should listen to/watch this song/movie | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Use your notes to write an article for a newspaper or magazine to tell people about your favorite kind of music/movie and your favorite song/movie.**

Use the following expressions to help you:

- My favorite kind of music/movie is ...
- I like ... because ...
- It was ... by ...
- When I listen to / watch it, I feel ...
- I think you should listen to / watch it too because ...

## Self Check

**1** **Fill in the blanks with the words in the box.**

plenty of
suppose
war
electronic
actor
spare

1. The comedy has _____ dialog which is very humorous.
2. Since you prefer music that is relaxing, I don't _____ you would want to buy this _____ music CD.
3. Christmas is a time for spreading joy, so you should find some _____ time to spend with your loved ones.
4. Although he is an _____ who does not have much experience, he did an excellent job in the new _____ film.

**2** **Fill in the blanks with *who*, *that* or *which*. More than one answer may be possible.**

A: Hi, Cindy! Would you like to see *Sky High in 2050* this weekend?
B: Hmm ... no, I don't think movies _____ try to describe the future are very interesting. Could we see *City Danger* instead?
A: You mean, the new police story _____ was filmed in five countries?
B: Yes, that's the one. The actor _____ plays the hero used to be a schoolteacher!
A: OK, sure. It sounds like something _____ we both will enjoy!

**3** **Complete the sentences about yourself.**

1. I don't like music _____
2. I enjoy spending time in places _____
3. I have friends _____
4. I like movie stars _____



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 10

Section A

## You're supposed to shake hands.

Language Goal: Talk about customs and what you are supposed to do

**1a** **What do people do when they meet for the first time? Match the countries with the customs.**

| Countries | Customs |
|---|---|
| 1. _____ Brazil | |
| 2. __b__ the United States | a. bow |
| 3. _____ Japan | b. shake hands |
| 4. _____ Mexico | c. kiss |
| 5. _____ Korea | |




**1b** **Listen and check your answers in 1a.**

**1c** **Make conversations about what people in different countries do when they meet for the first time. Talk about the countries in 1a or other countries.**

A: What are people in Korea supposed to do when they meet for the first time?
B: They're supposed to bow. How about in the United States?
A: In the United States, they're expected to shake hands.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Maria is an exchange student. Last night she had dinner at an American friend's house. Listen and check (✔) the mistakes Maria made.**

**Maria's mistakes**

_____ arrived late
_____ ate the wrong food
_____ greeted Paul's mother the wrong way
_____ wore the wrong clothes



**2b** **Listen again. Fill in the blanks.**

1. Maria was supposed to arrive at 7:00, but she _____.
2. In Maria's country, when you're invited for 7:00, you're expected to _____.
3. When Maria met Paul's mom, she was supposed to _____.
4. Maria should ask what she is supposed to _____ if she is invited to a party next time.

**2c** **Role-play a conversation between Maria and Dan. Use the information in 2a and 2b.**

Dan: How was the dinner at Paul's house last night?
Maria: Well, it was OK, but I made some mistakes. I was supposed to arrive at 7:00, but ...

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**

Katie: How was the welcome party for foreign students last night?
John: Great! I made some new friends. But a funny thing happened.
Katie: What?
John: I met a Japanese boy called Sato, and as soon as I held out my hand, he bowed.
Katie: That's how people in Japan are expected to greet each other. It's impolite if you don't bow.
John: I didn't know that. So I just stood there with my hand out. Finally, I returned the bow.
Katie: I remember when I first met Marie last year, I did the same thing. I held out my hand and to my surprise, she kissed me on both sides of my face!
John: I wouldn't mind that!
Katie: Very funny. Later I found out French people are supposed to kiss when they see each other.





微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the following opinions of a Colombian and a Swiss student. In which country is it OK to be 15 minutes late for dinner?**



**Teresa Lopez**
*Cali, Colombia*



Where I'm from, we're pretty relaxed about time. We don't like to rush around, so we don't mind if people are a little late sometimes. If you tell a friend you're going to their house for dinner, it's OK if you arrive a bit late. We like to enjoy our time slowly. We value the time we spend with our family and friends in our everyday lives. We often just drop by our friends' homes if we have time. We don't usually have to make plans to meet our friends. When we see each other, it's polite for boys to shake hands and for girls to kiss each other on the side of the face. We often just walk around the town center, seeing as many of our friends as we can!



**Marc LeBlanc**
*Lausanne, Switzerland*



In Switzerland, it's very important to be on time. We're the capital of clocks and watches, after all! If someone invites you to meet him or her at noon, then you're expected to be there at noon. If you're even 15 minutes late, your friend may get mad. So I make an effort to be on time when I meet my friends. I always leave the house early to avoid heavy traffic because I think it's impolite to keep others waiting. Also, we never visit a friend's house without calling first. We almost always make plans to see friends. We usually plan to do something interesting, or go somewhere together.

**3b** **Read the passage again and complete the chart.**

| Ideas and customs about ... | Colombia | Switzerland |
|---|---|---|
| being on time | | |
| visiting a friend's house | | |
| making plans with friends | | |

**3c** **Role-play a conversation. Student A is Teresa and Student B is Marc. Teresa is late and Marc is mad.**

A: Hi, Marc. Sorry I'm a little late.
B: Teresa, you're 10 minutes late!
A: It's just 10 minutes! It's no big deal!
B: Well, in Switzerland, you're supposed to ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| What are you supposed to do when you meet someone for the first time? | You're supposed to shake hands. You're not supposed to kiss. |
| When were you supposed to arrive? | I was supposed to arrive at 7:00. |
| Am I supposed to wear jeans? | No, you're expected to wear a suit and tie. |
| Is it impolite to keep others waiting? | Yes, it's very impolite to keep others waiting. |
| Is it important to be on time? | Yes, it's important to be on time. |

**4a** **Complete the sentences with the phrases in the box.**

be supposed to
be expected to
be important to

1. When you go abroad, it _____ bring your passport.
2. After class, students _____ clean the chalk off the blackboard.
3. If you visit the northern coast of Norway during the winter season, it _____ pack warm clothes.
4. If there are people in the meeting room, you _____ knock before entering.
5. In many eastern European countries, you _____ take off your gloves before shaking hands.

**4b** **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in brackets.**

Each country has different rules about social situations. A traveler _____ (not expect; know) all of these, but it is helpful _____ (learn) as many of these customs as possible. One of the best ways to be accepted in a foreign country is to try _____ (understand) how people think. Learning what you _____ (suppose; do) and _____ (not suppose; do) in social situations may be difficult, but it is worth the trouble if you want to understand another culture.

**4c** **Make a list of advice for someone coming to your country as an exchange student for the first time. Work with your group to give advice about:**

- time
- meeting people
- table manners
- what to do for someone's birthday
- visiting someone's home
- giving gifts



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

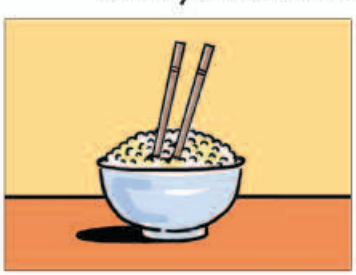
**1a** **How much do you know about table manners around the world? Take the following quiz. Circle *T* for true or *F* for false after each sentence.**



**Mind your manners!**

1. In India, you're supposed to eat with your hands. T F
2. In China, you're not supposed to stick your chopsticks into the food. T F
3. In Korea, the youngest person is expected to start eating first. T F
4. In France, you're supposed to put your bread on the table. T F
5. In China, it's impolite to use your chopsticks to hit an empty bowl. T F

**1b** **Steve is going to China to study. His friend Yang Ming is telling him about the table manners in China. Listen and number the pictures in the order you hear them.**







**1c** **Listen again. Match these sentence parts.**

| | |
|---|---|
| ____ 1. You're not supposed to ... | a. stick your chopsticks into your food. |
| ____ 2. It's impolite to ... | b. point at anyone with your chopsticks. |
| ____ 3. You shouldn't ... | c. start eating first if there are older people at the table. |

**1d** **Talk about other table manners in your country.**

A: We're supposed to ...
B: Yes, and it's impolite to ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **What do you know about customs in foreign countries? What do you think is the biggest challenge when visiting a foreign country?**

*e.g. My cousin went to America, and she said that learning basic table manners was her biggest challenge. She never knew what she was supposed to do at the dinner table.*

**2b** **Read the letter and answer the questions.**

1. Why is Lin Yue in France?
2. Does she enjoy staying with her host family? How do you know?
3. How does she feel about making mistakes when she speaks French?
4. What is the biggest challenge she is facing?

**REVIEWING**

**Taking notes or summarizing the main ideas can help you move language from your short-term to long-term memory.**

Dear Laura,

Thanks for your message. Yes, I'm having a great time on my student exchange program in France. I was a bit nervous before I arrived here, but there was no reason to be. My host family is really nice. They go out of their way to make me feel at home. The grandmother knows that I miss Chinese food a lot. So she actually learned how to make Chinese food! She also has a teenage granddaughter about my age who is really kind. She always talks to me in French to help me practice. You wouldn't believe how quickly my French has improved because of that. I'm very comfortable speaking French now. Although I still make lots of mistakes, it doesn't worry me as it used to.

My biggest challenge is learning how to behave at the dinner table. As you can imagine, things are very different from the way they are at home. For example, you're not supposed to put your bread on your plate. You're supposed to put it on the table! I thought that was pretty strange at first, but now I'm used to it. Another example is that you're not supposed to eat anything with your hands except bread, not even fruit. You have to cut it up and eat it with a fork. Another thing is that it is impolite to say you're full. If you don't want any more food, you should just say, "That was delicious." Also, you're not supposed to put your elbows on the table. I have to say that I find it difficult to remember everything, but I'm gradually getting used to it. I don't find French customs so strange anymore.



I'll write again soon and tell you more about my life in France. Hope you're having a good school year.

Yours,
Lin Yue



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Read the sentences and replace the underlined words with the phrases in the box.**

went out of their way
be comfortable (doing)
gradually gotten used to being (something)
worry (someone)

1. Making mistakes in French used to <u>make</u> Lin Yue <u>nervous</u>.
2. It was quite hard for her to <u>feel good about</u> speaking French.
3. The host family <u>tried very hard</u> to help Lin Yue.
4. Lin Yue has <u>slowly learned how to be</u> like her French friends.

**2d** **Review the passage and make notes about French customs in the chart.**

| Dos | Don'ts |
|---|---|
| You're expected to put your bread on the table. | You're not supposed to put your bread on your plate. |

**2e** **Compare the table manners in France and China in your group. How are they the same or different? Make a list.**

*e.g.* In France, people put their bread on the table. But in China, we always put our food on a plate or in a bowl. We never put food on the table.

---

**3a** **Your pen pal is coming to China on an exchange program. He/She is asking you about Chinese customs and what he/she is supposed to do or not. Make notes in the chart.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Table manners | It's polite/impolite to ... |
| House rules | You're supposed/not supposed to ... |
| Going out with people | You should ... |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write a letter to your pen pal to give him/her advice and suggestions on how to behave properly in China.**

Dear _____,

You must be excited about coming to China soon. Let me give you some suggestions and advice about Chinese customs. When you're eating at the table, it's impolite to _____

_____

In our house, you're supposed to _____

_____

When you go out with people, you should _____

_____

Have a safe trip, and I look forward to meeting you soon!

Best wishes,

_____

## Self Check

**1** **Fill in the blanks with the words in the box.**

worth
capital
basic
traffic
empty
mad
knocking

1. In many countries, it is impolite to show up at someone's house for the first time with _____ hands. You should always bring a small gift.
2. Billy was very uncomfortable at a fine-dining restaurant last night because he didn't know _____ table manners.
3. It is _____ spending the time to learn about the customs of a country before you go there. That way, you will know what you are supposed to do in different situations.
4. The _____ is always the worst in the _____ city. It is important to leave earlier if you are traveling by car.
5. Sandy went into her sister's room without _____ on the door. That made her sister _____.

**2** **Think about your culture and make statements.**

In my culture, when you ...

you're supposed to _____.

you're not supposed to _____.

you're expected to _____.

it's impolite to _____.

it's important to _____.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 11

Section A

## Sad movies make me cry.

Language Goal: Talk about how things affect you

**1a** **Look at the two restaurants below. Which would you like to go to? Why?**




**1b** **Listen and fill in the blanks. Then match the restaurants with the statements.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Rockin' Restaurant | 1. The _____ pictures make Amy _____.<br>2. The _____ music makes Amy _____. |
| Blue Ocean | 3. The _____ music makes Amy _____,<br>but it makes Tina _____. |

**1c** **Role-play a conversation between Amy and Tina.**

Amy: I'd rather go to Blue Ocean because I like to listen to quiet music while I'm eating.
Tina: But that music makes me sleepy. I want to have the hamburgers at Rockin' Restaurant.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Listen and number the pictures [1–4] in the order you hear them.**




**2b** **Listen again. Complete the statements.**

1. Waiting for Amy drove Tina _____.
2. Amy didn't want to _____ at Rockin' Restaurant.
3. Loud music makes John want to _____.
4. The movie was so sad that it made Tina and Amy _____.
5. Sad movies don't make John cry. They just make him want to _____.

**2c** **Look at 2a and 2b. Role-play a conversation between Tina and John. Use the example to begin your conversation.**

John: Did you have fun with Amy last night?
Tina: Well ... yes and no. She was really late.

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**



Nancy: Hey, Bert. I think I've made Alice mad and I'm not sure what to do about it.
Bert: What happened?
Nancy: You know Julie is Alice's best friend, right?
Bert: Uh-huh.
Nancy: Well, the more I get to know Julie, the more I realize that we have a lot in common. So we've been spending more time together lately.
Bert: But what's wrong with that?
Nancy: Umm ... it makes Alice unhappy because she thinks Julie is now better friends with me than with her.
Bert: I see. Mmm ... why don't you ask Alice to join you each time you do something with Julie? Then she won't feel left out.
Nancy: Oh, good idea! That can make our friendship stronger.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the story and answer the questions.**

1. Can medicine help the king? Why or why not?
2. Why does power not make the prime minister happy?
3. Why does money not make the banker happy?
4. Why does fame not make the singer happy?

## The Shirt of a Happy Man (Part I)

A long time ago, in a rich and beautiful country, there lived an unhappy king. He slept badly and didn't feel like eating. His face was always pale as chalk. He often cried for no reason. This made the queen and his people worried.

One day, a doctor was called in to examine the king. But he found nothing wrong with his body. "It's all in his mind. Neither medicine nor rest can help him. What he needs is the shirt of a happy person to wear. That'll make him happy."

The prime minister was called to the palace. But when they explained the king's situation to him, he said, "Although I have a lot of power, it doesn't make me happy. I'm always worried about losing my power. Many people are trying to take my position."

Then, the king's banker came to the palace. "Oh, I'm afraid I'm not happy either," he said. "I have a lot of wealth, but I'm always worried about losing my money. Someone tries to steal my money every day."



Next, the palace singer came to the king's room. But this was what he said: "It's true that I'm famous and everyone loves my songs. But I'm not happy because I'm always worried about being followed by others. I cannot be free!"

Finally, the king's top general was told to go out and find a happy man in three days' time.

(To be continued)

**3b** **Find words or phrases from the story with meanings similar to these phrases.**

1. did not want to eat _____
2. was asked to come and help _____
3. look carefully at _____
4. becoming less important _____
5. get my job _____

**3c** **Role-play the story with your group.**



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| |
|---|
| The loud music makes me nervous. |
| Soft and quiet music makes me relax. |
| Money and fame don't always make people happy. |
| She said that the sad movie made her cry. |

**4a** **Think of appropriate words for the blanks. Then compare your choices with your partner.**

Dear Diary, June 29th

I thought today was going to be really bad. To start with, it was cloudy and grey, and cloudy days make me _____. And this was the day we would get our exam results back, but I didn't answer the exam questions very well last week. That made me _____. I walked to school with my best friend Holly. She didn't say much to me. That made me a little _____. In class, the teacher handed back our exams. That made me _____. But I found out that I didn't do too badly. That made me very _____. Then things got even better. Holly bought me my favorite lemon drink and a turkey sandwich for lunch, and we talked a lot. That made me _____.

**4b** **Complete the survey. Then ask two other students.**

| What makes you ...? | You | Student 1 | Student 2 |
|---|---|---|---|
| happy | | | |
| want to cry | | | |
| uncomfortable | | | |
| angry | | | |
| nervous | | | |
| feel like dancing | | | |

A: What makes you angry?
B: When people throw rubbish on the streets, it makes me angry.
C: Me, too. It makes me want to tell them to clean up the streets.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **Look at the possible endings to the story about the unhappy king. Do you think any of these is the right one? If so, which one?**

a. The general cannot find a happy person and the king remains unhappy forever.
b. The general finds a happy person with power and money.
c. The general realizes he is a happy person and gives his shirt to the king to wear.
d. The king suddenly becomes happy without the shirt of a happy person.

**1b** **What are some other possible endings to the story? Discuss your ideas with your partner.**

**1c** **Listen to *The Shirt of a Happy Man* (Part II) and check (✔) the things that happened in the rest of the story.**



_____ The general searched for three days and found a happy person.
_____ The general could not find a happy person.
_____ The general saw a poor man on the street.
_____ The poor man was a happy man.
_____ The poor man gave the general his shirt.

**1d** **Listen again. Answer the questions.**

1. How long did it take the general to find the happy man?
2. What was the poor man doing on the street?
3. What made the poor man so happy even though he had no power, money or fame?
4. Do you think the general will return to the king with the poor man's shirt? Why or why not?

**1e** **Do you agree with the poor man's thoughts about happiness? Discuss your ideas with your group. Then role-play the rest of the story.**



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Have you ever made a mistake? How did it make you feel? Talk to your partner about what happened.**

**2b** **Read the story and number the events in the correct order.**

**RECOGNIZING IDIOMS AND PHRASES**

Knowing the meanings of idioms and verb phrases can improve your English.

## The Winning Team

Peter kept his eyes on the ground. He felt like there was a heavy weight on his shoulders as he walked home alone. It was the worst day of his life. His mind would not stop thinking about what happened only just an hour ago on the school soccer field. How could he have missed scoring that goal? He had let his whole team down. His stupid mistake made him angry. His team had lost the game because of him. He was really worried that his coach might kick him off the team.

As soon as he walked through the door, his father asked, "What's wrong, son?" Peter's feelings were written all over his face. "I lost the game," Peter replied. Then he went into his room without another word. Ten minutes later, Peter heard his father knocking on his bedroom door. He opened the door to let him in.

"Look, Peter. I don't know what happened. But whatever it was, don't be too hard on yourself."

"I lost the game, Dad. I failed my team. They'll probably never let me play again."

"Soccer is about team effort. You're not the only reason your team lost. If you have a good team, you should support each other. Besides, winning or losing is only half the game. The other half is learning how to communicate with your teammates and learning from your mistakes."

Peter didn't say anything, but what his father said made him think carefully.

The next day, Peter went to soccer practice with courage rather than fear in his heart.

"Hey, guys," he said to his teammates. "I'm really sorry about yesterday. We were so close to winning that game. But I think if we continue to pull together, we're going to win the next one."

To his surprise and relief, his teammates all nodded in agreement.

"Yeah," they said, "don't worry about it. It's never just one person's fault. We should think about how we can do better next time."

Peter smiled. It made him feel lucky to know that he was on a winning team.





微信公众号：电子课本大全

_____ Peter got home and went into his room.
_____ Peter talked to his teammates.
_____ Peter missed a goal.
_____ Peter's father gave him advice.
_____ Peter realized that he was worried for no reason.

**2c** **Read the story again and answer the questions.**

1. Why did Peter feel angry and worried?
2. What advice did Peter's father offer him?
3. Do you agree with Peter's father? Why or why not?
4. What happened after Peter told his teammates that he was sorry?
5. Why did Peter think that he was on a winning team even though they lost the last game?

**2d** **Find idioms or phrases from the story to replace the underlined parts of these sentences.**

1. He could not believe that he did not get the ball into the basket.
2. She was worried because she disappointed her parents.
3. Tony was sad that he was asked to leave the team.
4. You should learn to relax and not put so much pressure on yourself.
5. The teacher told the students to work hard together and not give up.

**2e** **Role-play a conversation between Peter and his father.**

Father: What's wrong, Peter? You look sad.
Peter: I missed scoring a goal. I made my team lose the game.
...

**3a** **Think of some experiences that made you feel very happy or sad. Tell your partner about them. Use the following ideas to help you.**

- winning/losing a competition
- getting good/bad grades on an exam
- performing something well/badly in front of a big group of people
- getting into a fight with your best friend
- your first trip outside your hometown



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write a story similar to the one in 2b using your notes in 3a.**

In your story, try to explain the following:

- What happened?
- When did it happen?
- Where did it happen?
- How did it make you feel? Why?
- What did you learn from the experience?

## Self Check

**1** **Put the words in the appropriate place in the chart.**

| | | Positive | Negative |
|---|---|---|---|
| nervous | unhappy | | |
| uncomfortable | worried | | |
| comfortable | relaxed | | |
| angry | awful | | |
| happy | uneasy | | |

**2** **Write sentences using the words given.**

1. sad movies / cry
   Sad movies make me cry.
2. speaking in front of many people / nervous
   _____
3. money and fame / not always happy
   _____
4. soft piano music / relaxed
   _____
5. rainy days / stay at home and watch TV
   _____

**3** **Number the things [1–6] (1 = least important, 6 = most important). Write a reason for each choice.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| _____ fame | _____ power | _____ friendship |
| _____ wealth | _____ health | _____ family |

*e.g.* Fame is not very important. It can make me nervous if too many people follow me around.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 12

Section A

## Life is full of the unexpected.

Language Goal: Narrate past events

**1a** **Look at the pictures. What happened to the girl?**
















**1b** **Listen to Mary talking about her morning. Complete the sentences.**

1. By the time I got up, my brother _____ already _____ in the shower.
2. By the time I got outside, the bus _____ already _____.
3. When I got to school, I realized I _____ _____ my backpack at home.

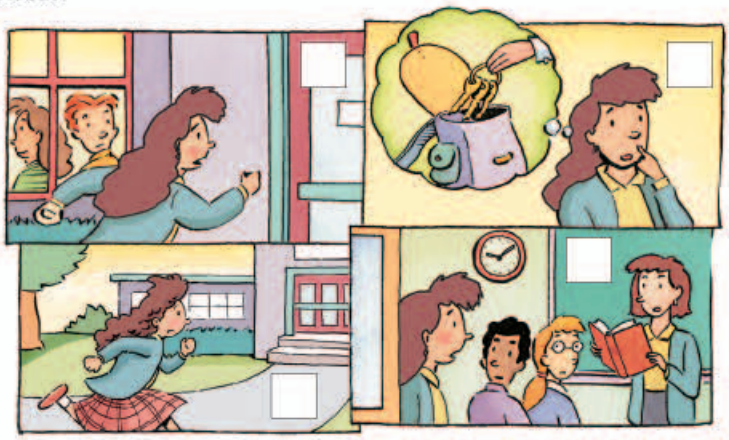
**1c** **Take turns being Mary. Look at the pictures above and talk about what happened this morning.**

A: What happened?
B: I overslept. By the time I got up, my brother had already gotten in the shower.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Listen to Mary continue her story. Number the pictures [1–4] in the correct order.**



**2b** **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets. Then listen again and check your answers.**

1. When I _____ (get) home, I realized I _____ (leave) my keys in the backpack.
2. By the time I _____ (get) back to school, the bell _____ (ring).
3. By the time I _____ (walk) into class, the teacher _____ (start) teaching already.

**2c** **Make up an ending for the story and share it with your partner.**

The teacher looked at Mary and ...

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**




Matt: Why were you late for class today, Kevin?
Kevin: My alarm clock didn't go off! I kept sleeping, and when I woke up it was already 8:00 a.m.!
Matt: Oh, no!
Kevin: So I just quickly put on some clothes and rushed out of the door.
Matt: You didn't eat breakfast?
Kevin: No, I didn't even brush my teeth or wash my face! But before I got to the bus stop, the bus had already left.
Matt: Then how did you get here?
Kevin: Luckily, Carl's dad saw me on the street and gave me a lift in his car.
Matt: Well, at least by the time you got to school, you were only five minutes late for class.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the passage and answer the questions.**

1. Which two events does the writer mention?
2. How did the writer end up missing both events?

**Life Is Full of the Unexpected**



In May 2001, I found a job in New York at the World Trade Center. On September 11, 2001, I arrived at my building at around 8:30 a.m. I was about to go up when I decided to get a coffee first. I went to my favorite coffee place even though it was two blocks east from my office. As I was waiting in line with other office workers, I heard a loud sound. Before I could join the others outside to see what was going on, the first plane had already hit my office building. We stared in disbelief at the black smoke rising above the burning building. I felt lucky to be alive.

Almost 10 years later, I woke up at 10:00 a.m. on February 21, 2011 and realized that my alarm had never gone off. I jumped out of bed and went straight to the airport. But by the time I got to the airport, my plane to New Zealand had already taken off. "This is the first holiday I've taken in a year, and now I've missed my plane. What bad luck!" I thought to myself. The other planes were full so I had to wait till the next day. The next morning, I heard about the earthquake in New Zealand the day before. My bad luck had unexpectedly turned into a good thing.

**3b** **Find words from the passage with opposite meanings to the words below. Then write a sentence with each word.**

1. lost: _____
2. west: _____
3. below: _____
4. dead: _____
5. empty: _____

**3c** **Retell one of the events to your partner. Use these words and phrases to help you.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| stare | in disbelief | take off | unexpected | burn | above |
| alive | till/until | arrive at | be about to | even though | |

*e.g.* On September 11, 2001, I arrived at my ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

When I got to school, I realized that I had left my backpack at home.

By the time I got back to school, the bell had rung.

Before I got to the bus stop, the bus had already left.

I was about to go up to my office when I decided to get a coffee first.

As I was waiting in line with the other office workers, I heard a loud sound.

**4a** **Make sentences using *by the time* or *before*.**

1. Tim went into the bathroom. Mary got up.
   By the time Mary got up, Tim had already gone into the bathroom.
2. The coffee became cold. I put cream in the coffee.
   _____
3. The teacher collected the math homework. I got to school.
   _____
4. I completed the work for my boss. The workday ended.
   _____
5. The movie started. I arrived at the cinema.
   _____
6. My mother finished making the apple pie. I got home from my language course.
   _____

**4b** **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box.**

rush out
forget
arrive at
go into
show up
find out

1. By the time I arrived at the party, everyone else _____ already _____.
2. When he put the noodles into a bowl, he realized he _____ to add the green beans.
3. By the time my mother came back from the market, I _____ already _____ of the door to go to my piano lesson.
4. Before she got to the airport, she _____ about the earthquake.
5. When she _____ the movie theater, she remembered she had forgotten to feed her dog.
6. Before she got a chance to say goodbye, he _____ the building.

**4c** **Write two true statements and one false statement about your day yesterday. Then ask your classmates to guess the false statement.**

1. By the time I left for school in the morning, _____
2. By the end of the school day, _____
3. By dinner time, I _____



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **Put these words in the correct columns in the chart. Some words can go in more than one column.**

| Nouns (people, places, things) | Verbs (action words) | Adjectives (description words) |
|---|---|---|
| fool | fool | embarrassed |

| | |
|---|---|
| fool | invite |
| costume | embarrassed |
| go off | call |
| get dressed | empty |
| show up | realize |
| change | clock |
| tired | stay up |

**1b** **Tell your partner about something that happened to you recently. Use two or more words in 1a.**

Last Friday night, my friend invited me to his birthday party ...

**1c** **Dave, Nick and Joe are talking about April Fool's Day. Listen and write each person's name under the correct picture.**













**1d** **Listen again. Who says each of the phrases below? Write *D* for Dave, *N* for Nick and *J* for Joe.**

1. D a costume party
2. _____ my alarm went off
3. _____ stayed up all night
4. _____ was tired
5. _____ was really embarrassed
6. _____ the other kids showed up

**1e** **Tell April Fool's Day stories in your group. Use the information in 1c and 1d.**

A: What happened to Dave on April Fool's Day?
B: Well, a friend invited him to a costume party ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Have you ever played jokes on others, especially on April Fool's Day? Have you ever been fooled by others? Tell your story to your partner.**

**2b** **Read the passage quickly. Then match each paragraph with the main idea.**

| | |
|---|---|
| Paragraph 1 | One of the most famous tricks played |
| Paragraph 2 | Examples of funny stories that happened on April Fool's Day |
| Paragraph 3 | An introduction to April Fool's Day |
| Paragraph 4 | A sad story that happened on April Fool's Day |

**USING BACKGROUND KNOWLEDGE**

**Carefully reading the first sentence in each paragraph can activate your own knowledge of the topic and help you guess what the whole text is about.**

April Fool's Day is a celebration that takes place in different countries around the world. It happens on April 1st every year and is a day when many people play all kinds of tricks and jokes on each other.

One April Fool's Day, a reporter in England announced that there would be no more spaghetti because the spaghetti farmers in Italy had stopped growing spaghetti. Many people ran to their local supermarkets to buy as much spaghetti as they could. By the time people realized that the story was a hoax, all of the spaghetti across the country had been sold out. In another famous trick a TV show in England reported the discovery of special water. They said this water would help people lose weight and that one customer had already lost a lot of weight in just four months. By the end of the day, more than 10,000 people had phoned the TV station to find out how to get this water.

Many April Fool's jokes may end up being not very funny. A famous TV star once invited his girlfriend onto his show on April Fool's Day. He asked her to marry him. The lady was so happy because she really wanted to get married. However, when she said yes, he replied, "April Fool!" That little joke didn't have a very happy ending. The TV star lost his girlfriend and his show was canceled.

One of the world's most famous tricks, however, happened in October rather than in April. In that month in 1938, actor Orson Welles announced on his radio program that aliens from Mars had landed on the earth. He described where they had landed and told how they were moving across the United States. Welles made it sound so real that hundreds of people believed the story, and fear spread across the whole country. By the time police officers announced that the story was a hoax, thousands of people had left their homes.





微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Read the passage again and answer the questions.**

1. Why did the supermarkets run out of spaghetti one April Fool's Day?
2. What did the TV show say the special water could do?
3. Why did the TV star's joke have a bad ending?
4. When did Orson Welles tell people about aliens from Mars landing on the earth?
5. Why did so many people believe Orson Welles?
6. Which of these stories is the most believable? Which is the least believable? Why?
7. Would you be fooled by any of these stories?

**2d** **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.**

1. After the spaghetti story _____ (appear) in the news, everyone _____ (rush) to the supermarkets.
2. By the time people _____ (find out) the story was not true, all the spaghetti in the supermarkets _____ (disappear).
3. By the time the day _____ (end), more than 10,000 people _____ (call) the TV station to ask about the special water.
4. By the time the show _____ (end), the TV star _____ (lose) his girlfriend.
5. By the time police officers _____ (tell) the country that the story was a hoax, many people _____ (run away) from their homes.

**2e** **Tell your funny story from 2a to the class. The class will vote for:**

a. the funniest joke
b. the most embarrassing joke
c. the most creative joke

A: What's your story?
B: Well, last year, on the first day of school, my sister put a piece of paper on my back that said "Please say hello." All morning at school ...

**3a** **Can you remember a lucky or an unlucky day? What happened? Make some notes about what you remember.**

| | |
|---|---|
| What was the date? | |
| What happened first? | |
| Was this lucky or unlucky? Why? | |
| What happened next? | |
| How did the day end? | |
| How did you feel about this day? | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write a story about your lucky or unlucky day and tell your story to a partner or the class.**

**My lucky/unlucky day**

I will always remember the date ...
This was the luckiest/unluckiest day of my life ...
When I woke up that morning ...
Later that day, ...
I couldn't believe ...
Then/After that, ...
Finally, ...
I think ...
What a lucky / an unlucky day!

## Self Check

**1** **Complete the passage with the correct form of the words in the box.**

cancel
miss
west
accident
lady
officer
market
unexpected

Last Saturday after my French course, I decided to drive to the _____ to buy a meat pie for dinner. As I was heading _____, I saw a huge truck in the middle of the road. There had been a(n) _____ and there were many police _____ around. I turned around and decided to go to a nearby mall. However, I _____ the road that led to the mall. Then I saw a restaurant that sold chicken noodles. I went inside and the _____, who was the owner, served me the most delicious bowl of chicken noodles ever. I had made a(n) _____ discovery! I'm so glad that I _____ my plan to go to the market.

**2** **Think of ways to finish the answers.**

1. A: Why didn't you hand in your science homework?
   B: Before I could start working on it, _____.
2. A: Why didn't you take a shower this morning?
   B: By the time I got up, _____.
3. A: Why did you have to walk home from school?
   B: By the time I left my school, _____.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 13

Section A

## We're trying to save the earth!

Language Goal: Talk about pollution and environmental protection

**1a** **Here are some words related to different kinds of pollution. Write them in the box below. Then add more words.**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| loud music | cars | rubbish | planes |
| littering | ships | factories | smoking |
| building houses | mobile phones | | |









| noise pollution | air pollution | water pollution |
|---|---|---|
| _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ |
| _____ | _____ | _____ |

**1b** **Listen and complete the sentences.**

| | |
|---|---|
| What was the problem? | The river was _____. Even the bottom of the river was full of _____. There were no more _____ for fishermen to catch. |
| What caused the problem? | People are throwing _____ into the river. Factories are putting _____ into the river. |
| How should the problem be solved? | We should write to the _____ and ask them to _____ the factories. Everyone should help to _____ the river. |

**1c** **Role-play the conversation. Then make your own conversations about the kinds of pollution in 1a.**

Mark: The river was dirty. Even the bottom of the river was full of rubbish.
Tony: But it used to be so clean!
Mark: Yes, but people are throwing litter into the river.
Tony: Everyone in this town should play a part in cleaning it up!



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Listen to the interview. Circle the kinds of pollution that Jason and Susan talk about.**

A. land pollution B. air pollution C. noise pollution D. water pollution

**2b** **Listen again and complete the sentences.**

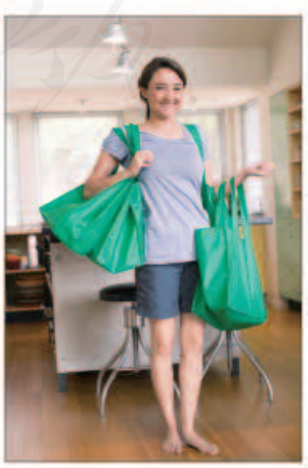
1. The air is badly polluted because there are _____ on the road these days.
2. Factories that burn coal also _____ the air with a lot of black smoke.
3. There is also too much rubbish and waste. People _____ things every day.
4. People are also littering in _____ like parks. This is turning beautiful places into ugly ones.

**2c** **Use the information in 2a and 2b to role-play conversations between Jason and Susan.**

Jason: The air has become really polluted around here. I'm getting very worried.
Susan: Yes, I used to be able to see stars in the sky.
Jason: The problem is that ...

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**

Interviewer: Jason and Susan, what are your ideas for solving these problems?
Jason: Well, to cut down air pollution, we should take the bus or subway instead of driving.
Susan: Yeah, or ride a bike. There are other advantages of bike riding. It's good for health and it doesn't cost anything!
Interviewer: Great ideas! What about waste pollution?
Susan: Mmm, I think simple things like bringing a bag to go shopping can help. I started doing that a year ago.
Jason: Me, too. Also, I never take wooden chopsticks or plastic forks when I buy takeaway food. I use the ones at home.
Susan: And remember to throw rubbish in the bins and keep public places clean and beautiful for everyone.
Interviewer: So together, our actions can make a difference and lead to a better future!





微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the passage about sharks and complete the fact sheet below.**



### Save the Sharks!

Many have heard of shark fin soup. This famous and expensive dish is especially popular in southern China. But do you realize that you're killing a whole shark each time you enjoy a bowl of shark fin soup?

When people catch sharks, they cut off their fins and throw the sharks back into the ocean. This is not only cruel, but also harmful to the environment. Without a fin, a shark can no longer swim and slowly dies. Sharks are at the top of the food chain in the ocean's ecosystem. If their numbers drop too low, it will bring danger to all ocean life. Many believe that sharks can never be endangered because they are the strongest in their food chain. But in fact, around 70 million sharks are caught and traded in this industry every year. The numbers of some kinds of sharks have fallen by over 90 percent in the last 20 to 30 years.

Environmental protection groups around the world, such as WildAid and the WWF, are teaching the public about "finning". They have even asked governments to develop laws to stop the sale of shark fins. So far, no scientific studies have shown that shark fins are good for health, so why eat them? Help save the sharks!

| | |
|---|---|
| Where shark fin soup is popular | |
| Number of sharks caught and traded every year | |
| How governments can help | |
| Two environmental groups against "finning" | |

**3b** **Read the passage again and fill in the blanks with the words in the box.**

so
although
if
but
when

1. Many people do not realize they are killing a whole shark _____ they enjoy a bowl of shark fin soup.
2. Sharks are at the top of the food chain, _____ if their numbers drop, the ocean's ecosystem will be in danger.
3. Many think that sharks are too strong to be endangered, _____ they are wrong.
4. _____ there are no scientific studies to support this, a lot of people believe that shark fins are good for health.
5. Sharks may disappear one day _____ we do not do something to stop the sale of shark fins.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| We're trying to save the earth. | Present progressive |
| The river used to be so clean. | *used to* |
| The air is badly polluted. | Passive voice |
| No scientific studies have shown that shark fins are good for health. | Present perfect |
| We should help save the sharks. | Modal verbs |

**4a** **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.**

Joe: _____ you ever _____ (take) part in an environmental project?
Ken: Yes, I have. I _____ (help) with a Clean-Up Day last year. It was _____ (consider) the biggest clean-up project this city _____ ever _____ (have).
Joe: How many people _____ (take) part?
Ken: I _____ (think) more than 1,000 people _____ (come) to help out.
Joe: That's fantastic! I guess everyone in this city is _____ (try) to improve the environment.
Ken: Yes, we can't afford to _____ (wait) any longer to take action!

**4b** **Fill in the blanks with the appropriate modal verbs from the box.**

can
would
could
have to
should
must
may/might

People _____ think that big things _____ be done to save the earth. Many forget that saving the earth begins with small things. For example, you _____ save electricity by turning off the lights when you leave a room. You _____ also use reusable bags instead of plastic bags. I think it's a great idea that you now _____ pay for plastic bags in some stores. And instead of driving to school or work, you _____ ride your bike or walk. If it's far, you _____ take the bus. All these small things _____ add up and become big things that _____ improve the environment. Let's take action now!

**4c** **Make a list of things that people can do to help the environment and discuss your list with your partner.**

use public transportation _____
_____

A: I think that everyone should use public transportation.
B: I disagree. It's difficult for parents with young children to use public transportation ...



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

**1a** **What can we do to help save the earth? Rank these items from the easiest (1) to the most difficult (5).**



_____ stop riding in cars
_____ recycle books and paper
_____ turn off the lights when you leave a room
_____ turn off the shower while you are washing your hair
_____ don't use paper napkins

**1b** **Compare your answers in 1a with your partner.**

A: Recycling paper is really easy.
B: I agree. But it's hard to stop riding in cars.

**1c** **Listen and check (✔) the things that Julia and Jack talk about.**

| Things Julia and Jack talk about | Things Julia is doing now | Things Julia will do in the future | Things Julia would never do |
|---|---|---|---|
| ✔ turning off the lights | | | |
| ____ turning off the shower | | | |
| ____ not using paper napkins | | | |
| ____ taking your own bags when shopping | | | |
| ____ not riding in cars | | | |
| ____ riding a bike | | | |
| ____ recycling paper | | | |

**1d** **Listen again. Check (✔) the things that Julia is doing now, the things she will do in the future and the things she would never do.**

**1e** **Make a conversation using the information from the chart above. Say what is true for you.**

A: We really shouldn't use paper napkins, you know.
B: I know. I stopped using them last year.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Look at the title and the pictures in 2b. Can you guess what the passage is about?**

**2b** **Read the passage and complete the chart below.**

**UNDERSTANDING PREFIXES AND SUFFIXES**

**Recognize how prefixes and suffixes may change the meanings of words and how they are used.**

## Rethink, Reuse, Recycle!

Do you often throw away things you don't need anymore? Have you ever thought about how these things can actually be put to good use? Nothing is a waste if you have a creative mind.

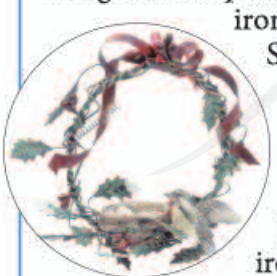


You have probably never heard of Amy Hayes, but she is a most unusual woman. She lives in a house in the UK that she built herself out of rubbish. The windows and doors come from old buildings around her town that were pulled down. The top of the house is an old boat turned upside down. And the gate in front of her house is made of rocks and old glass bottles. Amy recently won a prize from the Help Save Our Planet Society. The president said, "Amy is an inspiration to us all."



Amy isn't the only one who is good at recycling. Jessica Wong from Hong Kong uses old clothes that people don't wear anymore to make bags. She has been doing this for a few years now. She opened a small shop where she sells her bags, and she has also set up a website to sell them online. She especially likes to use old jeans to make handbags. Her bags are cute and useful. "I plan to write a book about new ways to use old clothes," she said. "I hope people can read my book and enjoy it!"

Wang Tao set up a small business in Shanghai four years ago. He is known for using iron and other materials from old cars to make beautiful art pieces. Some are large pieces that look like animals or humans, and some are smaller pieces you can put at home. The more popular works can even be seen in art shops around the city. Wang Tao hopes to set up a "metal art" theme park to show people the importance of environmental protection. Not only can the art bring happiness to others, but it also shows that even cold, hard iron can be brought back to life with a little creativity.



| Names | What materials did they use? | What did they make? |
|---|---|---|
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the phrases in the box.**

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| put to good use | build ... out of | pull down |
| set up | known for | not only ... but also |

1. Amy Hayes lives in the UK. Many of the old buildings in her neighborhood were _____.
2. All the rubbish and old things in Amy's neighborhood were then _____ when Amy built her house.
3. Amy is very creative. She _____ her front gate _____ rocks and old glass bottles. She put an old boat on top of her house.
4. Jessica Wong sells her bags in a small shop, but she has also _____ an online business to sell them.
5. Though Jessica's bags are made from old clothes, her bags are _____ being cute and useful.
6. Wang Tao _____ makes large pieces of metal art that look like animals or humans, _____ makes smaller pieces for the home.

**2d** **Underline the words in the passage based on the words below. What are the differences?**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| think | use | usual | recycle | build | create |
| special | recent | environment | important | protect | inspire |

**2e** **Make a list of things that need to be done to save the environment. Which things can be done by common people every day? Which things have to be done by governments and organizations? Discuss these with your group.**

**3a** **Think about the environment in your town/city and complete the chart below.**

Which parts of the town/city have a nice environment? Why are they nice? Which parts need to be improved? Why?

| Good environment | Why? | Bad environment | Why? |
|---|---|---|---|
| | | | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write a letter to the city mayor about the problems and your suggestions.**

In your letter, describe the environmental problems in your town/city.

- What are the problems?
- Where are they?
- What or who is causing these problems?

Then, give suggestions or possible ways to solve the problems.

> I think that ...
> We should/could ...
> I suggest ...

## Self Check

**1** **Write different forms of the words. Then add more to each group.**

| *v. — n.* | *n. — adj.* | *adj. — n.* | *adj. — adv.* |
|---|---|---|---|
| pollute— | fame— | different— | slow— |
| act— | wood— | important— | wide— |
| protect— | science— | | sudden— |
| inspire— | health— | | real— |
| build— | south— | | |
| create— | care— | | |

**2** **Match each statement with the grammar structure.**

| Statement | Grammar |
|---|---|
| The river used to be so clean. | Present progressive |
| We have seen many changes in the environment. | Modal verbs |
| People should take public transportation more. | Passive voice |
| The river is polluted by factories. | *used to* |
| The air pollution is getting worse and worse. | Present perfect |

**3** **Write ways to cut down on these kinds of pollution.**

| Kinds of pollution | Ways to cut down |
|---|---|
| water pollution | |
| land pollution | |
| noise pollution | |
| air pollution | |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# UNIT 14

Section A

## I remember meeting all of you in Grade 7.

**Language Goals:** Share past memories and experiences; Look ahead to the future

**1a** **Check (✔) the things you remember doing at junior high school. Add more to the list.**

At junior high school, I remember:

_____ winning a prize
_____ being a volunteer
_____ doing a school survey
_____ a friend helping me with a problem

_____

_____




**1b** **Listen and match the memory with the person.**

| | |
|---|---|
| ___ Mary | a. did homework carefully to meet the standards of a strict teacher |
| ___ Frank | b. remembers losing a schoolbag |
| ___ Sarah | c. remembers meeting this group of friends |
| ___ Peter | d. has enjoyed every year of junior high school |

**1c** **List some memories and experiences from junior high school. Share your lists with your partner.**

| Memories and experiences |
|---|
| I remember ...<br>scoring two goals in a row during a soccer competition.<br>_____<br>_____ |
| I have ...<br>learned to play the keyboard in music class.<br>_____<br>_____ |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **Listen to the conversation. Check (✔) the facts you hear.**

_____ Someone didn't like P.E.
_____ Someone was advised to take a break from running by a teacher.
_____ Someone had a health problem.
_____ Someone joined the school band.
_____ Someone liked Mr. Hunt's teaching methods.

**2b** **Listen again. Match each question with the name of the person.**

| Question | Answer |
|---|---|
| _____ 1. Who wants to study medicine? | a. Luke |
| _____ 2. Who told someone to take a break from running? | b. Brian |
| _____ 3. Who hurt his or her knee? | c. Mr. Hunt |
| _____ 4. Who thinks the That's Life concert is the best memory? | d. Lisa |

**2c** **Role-play a conversation in your group using the information in 2a and 2b.**

A: Do you remember Mr. Hunt?
B: Of course! He's a great teacher. He gave really clear instructions during P.E. class.
C: Yeah, he ...

**2d** **Role-play the conversation.**

Judy: Which teachers will you miss the most after junior high school, Clara?
Clara: Ms. Lee and Mr. Brown.
Judy: I know that Ms. Lee was always patient with you in math class. She helped you to work out the answers yourself no matter how difficult they were.
Clara: Yes, and Mr. Brown guided me to do a lot better in science. He always took the time to explain things to me clearly whenever I couldn't understand anything. Who will you miss?
Judy: Ms. Griffin. She encouraged me in English class. She always told me, "You can do it!" Because of her, I put in more effort and my exam scores doubled.
Clara: Shall we get each of them a card and gift to say thank you?
Judy: Good idea. Let's go shopping tomorrow!





微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3a** **Read the passage and answer the questions.**

1. What kind of writing is this?
2. What is the main subject of this writing?
3. Who do you think the writer is?

## I Remember

Looking back at these past three years
I remember many things
Trying to be on time for morning readings
Running when the lunch bell rings

I remember the excitement
Of the school sports day each year
The many long hours of training
Pride of overcoming fear

I remember starting day one
The shyest in my whole class
Never speaking to anyone
And thinking I would not pass

Then slowly I made some new friends
To remember forever
Helping each other with homework
Getting better together

Preparing for art festivals
And making a great big mess
Having fun at New Year's parties
Wishing everyone the best

We have learned a different language
That is from a foreign land
English brings many challenges
We work hard to understand

And now it's time to graduate
We will leave our lovely school
I can't believe it's been three years
I'm trying to keep my cool

But it's difficult not to cry
I'll miss the school trees and flowers
And our kind and caring teachers
Wonderful memories of ours

**3b** **Read the poem again. Write the words that rhyme with the words below.**

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| things | rings | year | _____ | class | _____ |
| land | _____ | school | _____ | flowers | _____ |

**3c** **Have you experienced any of the following things? How did you feel? How does the writer feel about them?**

1. trying to be on time for morning readings
2. running to the dining hall when the lunch bell rings
3. training for sports day
4. starting the first day in Grade 7
5. slowly making some new friends
6. helping classmates with homework
7. preparing for art festivals
8. going to New Year's parties
9. learning English



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Grammar Focus

| | |
|---|---|
| What happened in Grade 7 that was special? | Our team won the school basketball competition. |
| How have you changed since you started junior high school? | I've become much better at speaking English. |
| How do you think things will be different in senior high school? | I think that I'll have to study much harder for exams. |
| What are your plans for next year? | I'm going to join the school volleyball team. |
| What do you remember about Grade 8? | I remember being a volunteer. |
| What did you use to do that you don't do now? | I used to take dance lessons, but I don't anymore. |
| What are you looking forward to? | I'm looking forward to going to senior high school. |

**4a** **Number the sentences to make a paragraph.**

____ When I get to senior high, I will join the school swim team.
1 My time in junior high school has been enjoyable.
____ In Grade 8, I studied harder but I still got poor grades in English. I had problems with pronunciation and reading texts. So the next year, I worked much harder and got better grades.
____ Next year, I will be in senior high school. I can't believe how fast the time went by!
____ This year, with Mr. Trent's help, my English level has been improving and I hope to get good grades at the end of the year.
____ In the first year, I didn't work very hard in class, but I joined many different school clubs and had a lot of fun.

**4b** **Write your own answers to the questions.**

1. What do you remember about Grade 7?

_____

2. What happened in Grade 8 that was special?

_____

3. What did you use to do that you don't do now?

_____

4. How have you changed since you started junior high school?

_____

5. How do you think things will be different in senior high school?

_____

6. What are your plans for next year?

_____

7. What are you looking forward to?

_____



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Section B

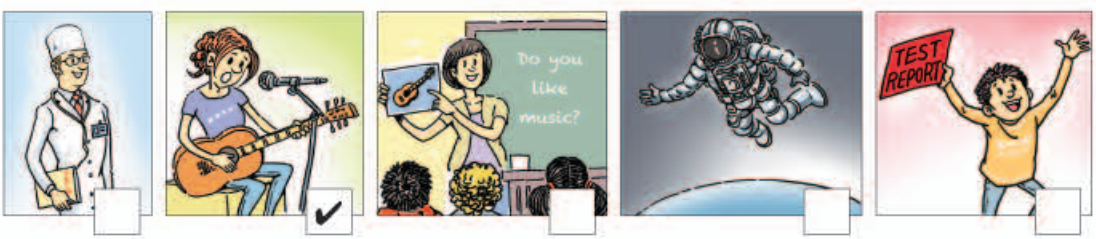
**1a** **Write about what you would like to do in the future.**

1. get a business degree and become a manager
2. _____
3. _____

**1b** **Talk about what you hope to do in the future.**

A: What do you hope to do in the future?
B: I hope to get a business degree and become a manager.

**1c** **Listen to a class discussion. Check (✔) the hopes you hear.**




**1d** **Listen again. Complete the passage.**

Today is the students' last class. Bob feels _____ about it and thinks Mrs. Chen's classes have been _____. The students talk about what they want to do in the future. Bob hopes to _____ the exam to get into senior high school. Shirley wants to get into a _____ school. Ken is good at _____ and he won a _____ for it. So he wants to be a(n) _____.
Mrs. Chen believes in all of them and tells them to "_____". To celebrate the end of junior high, they are having a _____. They ask Mrs. Chen to come, and she is happy to accept the invitation.

**1e** **Prepare a speech for your graduation. Use the questions to help you. Present your speech to your group.**

How have you changed since you started junior high school?
Who has helped you most?
What advice have your parents given you?
What will you do after you graduate?
What are you looking forward to?



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2a** **What is the most important thing you have learned in junior high school? Discuss the question with a partner.**

**2b** **Read the passage and answer the questions.**

1. What kind of text is this? Is it a story, a speech or a notice?
2. Who do you think wrote it?
3. Who is it for?

**IDENTIFYING TEXT TYPE AND PURPOSE**

**Quickly read through a text to see what kind of writing it is, who wrote it and why it was written.**

Ladies and gentlemen,

Thank you for coming today to attend the graduation ceremony at No. 3 Junior High School. First of all, I'd like to congratulate all the students who are here today. I remember meeting all of you when you were just starting Grade 7 at this school. You were all so full of energy and thirsty for knowledge. And yes, some of you were a little difficult to deal with! But today I see a room full of talented young adults who are full of hope for the future. You've all grown up so much and I'm so proud of you.



Although you've all worked very hard over the last three years, none of you did it alone. I hope you'll remember the important people in your lives who helped and supported you — your parents, your teachers and your friends. Please consider what they've done for you and what they mean to you. Never fail to be thankful to the people around you.

Lastly, the end of junior high school is the beginning of a new life. I don't need to tell you that life in senior high school will be harder and that you have many difficult tasks ahead of you. You'll make mistakes along the way, but the key is to learn from your mistakes and never give up. But along with difficulties, there will also be many exciting things waiting for you. Behind each door you open are chances to learn new things, and you have the ability to make your own choices. Choose wisely and be responsible for your decisions and actions. Although you have to go your separate ways now, I hope that in a few years' time, you'll come back to visit our school. As you set out on your new journey, you shouldn't forget where you came from. The future is yours.

Good luck and hope to see you again sometime soon!



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2c** **Read the passage again and answer the questions.**

1. What were the students like in Grade 7?
2. How have the students changed?
3. Who should the students thank and why?
4. What will senior high be like?
5. How should the students deal with the future?
6. What advice would you give to students who are just starting junior high school?

**2d** **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the words in the box.**

| attend | be thirsty for | none | set out | be proud of |
|---|---|---|---|---|

1. It is time to say goodbye, but _____ of us want to leave.
2. It is always hard to separate from those whom you have spent so much time with for the past three years. However, we are still excited to _____ on a new journey when we enter senior high school.
3. The teacher can see in our eyes that we _____ knowledge. She tells us that knowledge will give us wings to fly.
4. We will _____ the junior high graduation ceremony tomorrow. It is a very special time for us.
5. Our teachers and parents will _____ us because we have grown up and can be responsible for ourselves.

**2e** **<u>Underline</u> the sentences you like in the passage. Tell your partner what they mean and why you like them.**

**3a** **Think of a person or an event from junior high school that you will never forget. Make some notes about how this person or event changed your life in some way.**

Who is the person? / What is the event?
When and where did you first meet this person? / When and where did this event happen?
How did you feel when you met this person? / How did you feel when this event happened?
How did this person help you? / What happened later?
How has this person's advice/event changed your life?



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3b** **Write a passage about the person or event you thought about in 3a.**

- Describe the person/event.
- Explain how you feel about this person/event.
- Describe how this person/event has changed your life.

## Self Check

**1** **What happened in junior high that made you have these feelings? Complete the chart.**

| Feelings | Memories/Experiences |
|---|---|
| excited | |
| happy | |
| worried | |
| sad | |
| tired | |
| proud | |
| shy | |

**2** **Fill in the blanks with the correct forms of the verbs in brackets.**

I can't _____ (believe) that today is the last day of junior high school. I still _____ (remember) the first day of Grade 7 like it was yesterday. I used to _____ (be) a really shy person, so on the first day of junior high, I _____ (be) so scared and nervous. I _____ (think) that I would never make any friends. But now, I _____ (realize) that I was just being silly. Since then, I _____ (make) so many good friends and I _____ (share) so many good memories with them. Even though I _____ (be) sad that junior high is over, I _____ (look) forward to new experiences in senior high!



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# Notes on the Text

## Unit 1 How can we become good learners?

**1. Don't read word by word. Read word groups. 不要一个字一个字地读，要按意群读。**

1）此句中介词by表示连续或反复，意为“（一个）接着（一个）；（一个）又（一个）”。例如：

one by one 一个接一个　　little by little 一点一点

year by year 年复一年　　step by step 一步一步

They went out of the classroom one by one. 他们一个接着一个走出了教室。

2）word group表示“词组；意群”，指语言使用中表达意思相对完整的一组词语。在口语中，说话者应将其连贯说出，表达一个完整的意思。在阅读时，也应按意群读，以便更好地理解文章意思，加快阅读速度。

**2. It takes time. 这得慢慢来。**

动词take可用来表示“花费；消耗”时间。但在It takes time.和Please take your time.这样的句子中，它们所表达的意思是“不着急；慢慢来”。例如：

You can take your time. 你慢慢来。

A: These dresses are really nice and I can't decide which one to buy. 这几条裙子都很漂亮，我不知道该买哪一条。

B: Well, try them on and see how they look on you. Take your time. There's no hurry. 嗯，把它们都试试，看看穿上怎么样。你慢慢来，不着急。

**3. I also learned useful sentences like "It's a piece of cake" or "It serves you right". 我还学会了像“这简直是小菜一碟”和“你活该”这样的有用的句子。**

a piece of cake和serve somebody right是英语中的两个习惯用语，也可称作习语(idiom)。同汉语中的成语类似，习语是人们在长期的语言运用中确定或形成的一种固定表达方式，其意思往往不是字面所表达的含义。如：a piece of cake表示事情非常简单、易于解决，相当于汉语的“小菜一碟；小事一桩”；serve somebody right则相当于汉语说某人“活该”。再如：

It's a piece of cake to you, but for me it's quite different. 那对你来说是小菜一碟，但对我而言却完全不同。

A: Tommy came late again and was punished by Mr. Morton. 汤米又迟到了，被莫顿老师罚了。



微信公众号：电子课本大全

B: Serves him right. I told him yesterday to arrive early. 他活该，我昨天还告诉他要早到呢。

**4. I can't pronounce some of the words. 有些单词我不会读。**

**I can't spell some English words. 有些英语单词我拼不出来。**

以上两个否定句中，只能用some而不用any，因为some表示其中“一些”（单词），并非“全部”单词；若用any，那么I can't pronounce/spell any of the words.则表示“所有的单词都不会读（拼写）”。any强调的是“任何的；所有的”。some和any的运用要看具体的语境和句子所要表达的意义，而不是简单认为否定句和疑问句中不可使用some。在疑问句中，特别是在表示请求、建议和反问时，也往往使用some，因为some在这些语句中体现的是说话者肯定的含义。例如：

Can I have some of your cake? 我可以吃些你的蛋糕吗？

Shall we try some local food? 我们尝试一下当地的食物如何？

Why can't we just build some more parks? 为什么我们就不能修建更多的公园呢？

**5. But whether or not you can do this well depends on your learning habits. 但是你能否做好取决于你的学习习惯。**

1）此句中whether or not you can do this well是一个从句，用作整个句子的主语。这种从句叫作“主语从句”。又如：

*Whether you did it right or wrong* isn't so important. *What's important* is the experience you gained. 你做对做错都不重要，重要的是你从中获得了经验。

2）whether or not是英语从句的一个连词结构，意思和功能均相当于whether，表示“是否”，常出现在宾语从句、主语从句中。使用时，也可把whether和or not分开，or not放到句尾。例如：

I can't tell whether or not the teacher likes me. 我不知道老师喜不喜欢我。

此句也可以写成：I can't tell whether the teacher likes me or not.

**6. Alexander Graham Bell 亚历山大·格雷厄姆·贝尔**

亚历山大·格雷厄姆·贝尔（1847 — 1922）是出生于苏格兰的美国电气工程学家、发明家、企业家和聋哑教育家。贝尔以发明电话闻名于世。他在1876年申请并获得电话专利权时仅29岁。贝尔电话公司（AT&T公司的前身）于1877年成立。贝尔一生致力于科技发明和聋哑人教育领域，他还为创办美国“国家地理学会”（National Geographic Society）和科普期刊《科学》（*Science*）杂志做出了贡献。

**7. Knowledge comes from questioning. 知识源于质疑。**

question作动词，放在介词from后面要用它的-ing形式，在本句中是“质疑；质问”的意思。例如：

I just accepted what he told me. I never thought to question it. 我只是相信了他告诉



微信公众号：电子课本大全

我的话，从来没有质疑过。

People would question whether we are telling them the truth. 人们会质问我们是否向他们说了实话。

question用作动词还有“提问；讯问；审问”的意思。例如：

The police questioned him for three hours before letting him go. 警察询问了他三个小时方让他离开。

## Unit 2 I think that mooncakes are delicious!

**1. People go on the streets to throw water at each other. 人们走上街头互相泼水。**

本句中throw ... at ...意为“抛向；泼向；洒向”，动词throw后接所投掷的物体，用介词at引入泼洒或抛的对象。又如：

On our way here, someone threw a stone at our car, but fortunately we were not hit. 在我们来的路上，有人向我们的车投掷石块，所幸的是我们没被砸中。

It's the first snow of the year, and the children are happily throwing snowballs at each other. 这是今年的第一场雪，孩子们高兴地互相扔雪球。

**2. Christmas, Easter and Halloween 圣诞节、复活节和万圣节前夕**

圣诞节、复活节和万圣节前夕是西方英语国家三个十分重要的节日，均与宗教有一定的联系。

1) Christmas 圣诞节

圣诞节是为纪念基督耶稣诞生而在12月25日举行庆祝活动的节日。12月24日晚上被称为圣诞夜（Christmas Eve），是家庭团聚、共进晚餐、互赠礼品的时间。多年以来，世界各地以自己特有的方式庆祝圣诞节，这使得庆祝这个节日的习俗和传统变得丰富多彩。圣诞树多为节日的必需之物，一般是松树，树枝上挂满各种装饰物和彩灯，树顶上通常有一颗明亮的星星。孩子们还会期待着圣诞老人（Santa Claus）在圣诞夜送来礼物。现代的圣诞节已经不仅仅是宗教节日了，它已成为全世界流传最为广泛、庆祝最为隆重的节日之一。

2) Easter 复活节

复活节是基督教纪念耶稣死后复活的重大节日。据《圣经·新约》记载，由于叛徒犹大（Judas）的告密，耶稣被钉在十字架上，死亡三日后复活。复活节通常为北半球春分满月后的第一个星期日（通常在3月22日至4月25日之间）。复活节象征着重生与希望。除了举行宗教仪式之外，各国还有形式不同的庆祝活动。对孩子们而言，寻找被复活节小兔（Easter Bunny）藏起来的复活节彩蛋（Easter eggs）是复活节的传统活动。

3) Halloween 万圣节前夕

万圣节的名字来源于基督教，是纪念所有圣徒的日子。在中世纪的英格兰，万圣节



微信公众号：电子课本大全

叫作All Hallows，所以，万圣节前夕就成了Halloween，即Hallow和evening (eve) 的连读。万圣节还源于古代凯尔特人的秋天祭奠。凯尔特人认为10月31日秋天正式结束，亡魂会重新造访人世。出于害怕，人们也扮作各种鬼怪，以避免被鬼怪骚扰。人们至今还保留着这些早年的习俗，不过如今的万圣节充满了喜庆意味，已成为西方很普通的季节性节日，它的宗教色彩已十分淡薄。万圣节前夜，人们往往会在房屋四周的墙上悬挂用纸糊的巫婆、黑猫、鬼怪或尸骨等装饰品，窗前和门口则悬挂或放置着龇牙咧嘴的南瓜灯笼。当晚，成人们还喜欢举办化装舞会，孩子们也会打扮一番并在社区挨家挨户索要糖果，以Trick or treat!（不招待就捣乱！）等方式尽享快乐。

**3. Charles Dickens and his novel *A Christmas Carol* 查尔斯·狄更斯和他的小说《圣诞欢歌》**

Charles Dickens（1812 — 1870）查尔斯·狄更斯是英国最受欢迎的作家之一。他的代表作有《圣诞欢歌》《双城记》《远大前程》《大卫·科波菲尔》《艰难时世》《匹克威克外传》和《奥列佛·特维斯特》（又译为《雾都孤儿》）等。这些作品是世界文学宝库中的瑰宝，时至今日仍脍炙人口。除了作家之外，狄更斯还是著名的朗诵者、编辑、主编，并且他还总是乐于为各种慈善事业奔忙。

*A Christmas Carol*《圣诞欢歌》创作于1843年，是狄更斯以圣诞题材创作的一部著名小说。作品讲述了一个名叫斯克鲁奇（Scrooge）的商人，他为人吝啬、待人刻薄。三个幽灵在圣诞前夜登门造访了他，让他看到了自己的过去、现在和未来。翌日，斯克鲁奇洗心革面，痛改前非，转变成为一个慷慨大方、富有爱心的人。这部作品奠定了现代圣诞节的寓意和内涵，同时也告诫人们要拥有一颗善良、仁慈、怜悯、包容之心。善良仁慈、乐善好施才是幸福的源泉。

狄更斯这部作品对英语世界的影响深远，当代英语语汇中Scrooge（或scrooge）已成为一个普通名词，意为“吝啬鬼”。这一语义就是源自《圣诞欢歌》中斯克鲁奇这一人物形象。

**4. He also tells Scrooge to expect three spirits to visit him. 他还让斯克鲁奇等待三个幽灵的造访。**

**And that is the true spirit of Christmas. 这就是圣诞节真正的意义。**

以上两个例子中的名词spirit的意思完全不一样：第一个句子中spirit是“灵魂；鬼怪；幽灵”之意；第二个句子中spirit指与肉体相对而言的“精神；心灵”。试比较：

I shall be with you in spirit. 我在精神上与你们同在。

In the story, it is said that the area is haunted by evil spirits. 在故事里，据说那片地区闹鬼。

**5. He is mean and only thinks about himself. He doesn't treat others nicely. 他十分吝啬，只想着自己。他对待其他人也不友善。**



微信公众号：电子课本大全

mean在句中作形容词，意思是“吝啬的；小气的”。例如：

Mr. Smith is a mean old man. 史密斯先生是一个小气的老头。

He was mean to those who worked for him. 他对那些为他工作的人刻薄小气。

Some people around us are mean with money. 我们周围有些人在金钱方面十分吝啬。

## Unit 3 Could you please tell me where the restrooms are?

**1. I'm excited to try the rides! 要尝试些乘骑项目，我好兴奋呀！**

英语名词ride有多种用法和意思。涉及游乐园主题时，往往笼统地指园中各种各样“供玩乐的乘骑装置”，如：旋转木马、疯狂老鼠、过山车等。其具体的汉语译文要视情境而定。例如：

a roller coaster ride 坐过山车

How about that new ride over there? 去玩玩那个新开的乘骑项目怎样？

My favorite ride is the Ferris Wheel. 我最喜欢的乘骑项目是“大转轮”。

The rides are free today. 今天这些乘骑项目免费。

**2. Alice: ... could you first tell me where the restrooms are? 艾丽斯：……你能先告诉我哪儿有洗手间吗？**

**He Wei: Pardon? Restroom? You want to rest? 何伟：什么？休息室？你想要休息吗？**

上面对话中何伟误解了艾丽斯，认为restroom是休息室，但实际上，restroom在此处指的是“厕所；洗手间”。英语中常见的表达“厕所；洗手间”的词还有：toilet，washroom，bathroom等。

**3. I was scared at first, but shouting did help. 起初我好害怕，但大声喊还很管用。**

此句相当于I was scared at first, but shouting really helped. 原句是一种表示强调的句式，英语中，可用助动词do对谓语动词进行强调，构成强调句。例如：

Please do be careful. 请一定小心呦。

I do agree with you. 我完全同意你的意见。

He did warn you the other day, remember? 他前两天就告诫过你，还记得吗？

**4. Both are correct, but the first one sounds less polite. 两种说法都正确，但是第一个听起来没那么礼貌。**

“less + 形容词或副词”构成降级比较形式，相当于汉语“不那么；稍许不……”之意。例如：

His second movie is less interesting, I think. 我认为他的第二部影片就不那么有趣。

less后面常常接than，引入比较的对象。例如：

Some kinds of dogs are less friendly than others. 有些品种的狗不如其他品种那么友善。



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**5. It might seem more difficult to speak politely than directly.** 看起来说得客气要比说得直白更难一点。

1）句中it虽然是主语，但并没有意义。句子的真正主语是动词不定式短语to speak politely。it是“形式主语”，代替真实主语，放在句首，以免使句子有头重脚轻之感。又如：

It is very helpful to be able to speak a foreign language. 能说一门外语是非常有用的。

It took me three days to finish the project. 完成这个项目花了我三天时间。

2）情态动词might表达一种可能性及推测的不确定性，意思与表达可能性的may相当，表示“有可能；也许会”，但语气却更加委婉、含蓄，更不确定。例如：

The train might be a few hours late. 火车也许会晚点几个小时。

Gina might not be able to go. 吉娜可能去不了。

**6. There's an underground parking lot over there.** 那边有一个地下停车场。

parking lot意为“停车场”，属美语用法，其中lot为“土地”的意思。在英国，人们将停车场称作car park。

## Unit 4　I used to be afraid of the dark.

**1. I get tons of attention everywhere I go.** 无论我到哪里，总是被人关注。

get tons of attention在句中表示“被众人所关注；吸引无数目光”之意。其中tons of something是一种非正式的表达法，相当于lots of something，但带有一定夸张和感情色彩，表示“很多；极多”，具体翻译用词要根据上下文语境而定。再如：

They have tons of work to do every day. 他们每天有大量的工作要做。

The sports stars in America can make tons of money. 美国的体育明星能挣非常多的钱。

**2. Hanging out with friends is almost impossible for me now because there are always guards around me.** 现在与朋友们外出对我来说几乎不再可能，因为老有保安守在我的周围。

hanging out with friends在本句中是动词-ing形式作主语。又如：

Working together with them helped me know much more about their life. 与他们一同劳动帮我更好地了解了他们的生活。

Walking in the park is one of my favorite activities. 在公园散步是我最喜欢的活动之一。

**3. Many times I thought about giving up, but I fought on.** 许多次我都想放弃，但我奋力坚持了下来。

本句中的fight为“努力去做；尽力尝试”之意，副词on表示“继续（地）；持续（地）”。因此，fight on表示“奋力坚持下去”的意思。例如：

We must fight on until the end of the battle. 我们必须坚持到战斗结束。



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**4. She advised them to talk with their son in person.** 她建议他们亲自与自己的儿子谈谈。

in person为介词短语，表示“亲自；亲身”。例如：

I called him but he didn't answer. So I decided to talk to him in person. 我给他打电话，但他没接，所以我决定亲自去跟他谈谈。

You have to sign for it in person. 你必须亲自签收。

## Unit 5 What are the shirts made of?

**1. Where is tea produced in China?** 中国哪里产茶？

英语中produce，grow和plant三个动词均可用来描述农作物及植物的“种植；生产；生长”，但有所区别。produce指农作物成产量化地“出产”，或自然地“生长出；长出；结出（果实）”。例如：

This region produces over 50% of the country's rice. 这个地区出产整个国家50%以上的大米。

These trees can produce very good apples. 这些树能结出优质的苹果。

grow表示“种植；使生长”，着重指种植以后的栽培、生长过程。例如：

These plants grow from seeds. 这些植物从种子生长而来。

The villagers grow coffee and corn to sell in the market. 村民们种植咖啡和玉米好拿到市场上去卖。

plant侧重“栽种；播种”这一行为，指把种子或秧苗栽种到土壤里使之生长。例如：

How many trees have you planted this year? 今年你们种了多少棵树？

They planted tomatoes and carrots in their backyard. 他们在后院栽种了西红柿和胡萝卜。

**2. He realized that Americans can hardly avoid buying products made in China.** 他意识到美国人几乎无法避免购买中国制造的产品。

动词avoid的意思是“回避；逃避；躲避”，其后可接名词、代词及动词-ing形式等作宾语，但不可接动词不定式。例如：

I can see she's trying hard to avoid meeting my eyes. 我看得出来她极力回避我的目光。

avoid另有“避免；阻止发生（不好的事情）”的意思。例如：

Young children are taught road safety to avoid road accidents. 对孩子们进行道路安全教育以避免交通事故的发生。

It's not a bad idea to keep quiet to avoid a quarrel. 保持沉默以避免吵架不是个坏主意。

**3. Kang Jian thinks it's great that China is so good at making these everyday things.** 康健认为中国擅长制造这些日常商品是很了不起的。



微信公众号：电子课本大全

everyday 是 every 和 day 构成的一个合成词，意为“每日的；每天的；日常的；平日的”。everyday 是形容词，仅用在名词之前作定语，不能单独使用。例如：

everyday life 日常生活　　everyday English 日常英语

everyday activities 日常活动　　everyday clothes 平日里穿的服装

注意：everyday 与 every day 有区别，every day 是副词短语，意为“每天”，相当于 each day，通常用作句子的时间状语。例如：

We see each other every day. 我们俩每天见面。

The teacher asked us to read English books every day. 老师让我们每天都要读英语书。

**4. The most common things, from paper to clay to bamboo, are turned into objects of beauty. 最为普通的东西，从纸张到陶土再到竹子，都变成了精美的物品。**

1）turn ... into ... 表示“把……变成……；使……变成……”，而 turn into 表示“转变；变成”等意思。例如：

Can you turn an egg into a flower? 你能够把鸡蛋变成花朵吗？

In recent years, spring has quickly turned into hot summer in our area. 近年来，在我们这个地区，春天很快就变成了炎热的夏天。

The sunny morning turned into a rainy day. 晴朗的早晨变成了雨天。

2）objects of beauty 在此为“精美之物；精美物品”的意思。其中 object 指具体、实际的“物品；东西”。例如：

an everyday object such as a spoon 诸如勺子这样的日常物品

Look, there's a strange object in the sky! 快瞧，天上有一个奇怪的东西！

**5. The pieces are carefully shaped by hand from a very special kind of clay and then allowed to air-dry. 这些作品通过手工用一种特殊的陶土精心塑型，然后再自然晾干。**

1）此句中名词 piece 意为“作品”，指由艺人、作家等创作出来的艺术品或文学作品。例如：

Just take a look at this lovely clay piece. Doesn't this boy look real! 看看这个可爱的小陶人，这男孩看上去多么逼真啊！

Did you read that piece in today's newspaper? 你看过今天报纸上的那篇文章了吗？

Liszt wrote lots of piano pieces. 李斯特写了许多钢琴曲。

2）air-dry 是由 air 和 dry 复合而成的一个合成动词，意为“晾干”，类似的词还有 blow-dry 吹干。

## Unit 6　When was it invented?

**1. Well, you do seem to have a point ... 嗯，看来你说的确实有点道理……**

这句话中的助动词 do 放在动词 seem 前面主要用来加强语气，通常可译作“的确；确



微信公众号：电子课本大全

实”。在谓语动词前添加助动词do表示强调的用法常见于肯定句和祈使句中，类似的例子在本册第三单元中已出现。又如：

I do hope you can come to my party. 我真的希望你能来参加我的聚会。

在英语中，have a point通常指某人的说法或想法“有道理”。如：

Perhaps you have a point there, but the problem is that we don't have a choice. 也许你说的有道理，但问题是我们没有选择。

**2. It is said that a Chinese ruler called Shen Nong was the first to discover tea as a drink. 据说有一位叫作神农的中国统治者最早发现了茶可以饮用。**

It is said that ... 是一个常见句式，表示“据说……”，that后面接完整的句子。又如：

It is said that thirteen is an unlucky number in many Western countries. 据说在许多西方国家13是个不吉利的数字。

本单元还有一个类似的句式：It is believed that .... 意思是“人们认为……”，其后同样接完整的句子。例如：

It is believed that tea was brought to Korea and Japan during the 6th and 7th centuries. 人们认为，茶在六至七世纪传到了朝鲜和日本。

**3. *Cha Jing*《茶经》**

《茶经》是我国唐代一部有关茶叶及品茶的专著，作者陆羽。该书共分三卷十节，全面叙述了茶叶生产的历史、源流、生产技术以及饮茶技艺和茶道原理，享有“茶叶百科全书”之美誉。

**4. In 1875, Mr. Bell learned how to send musical notes through an instrument similar to a telephone. 1875年贝尔先生学会用一种类似电话的器械发送乐符。**

musical note意为“乐符”。作为术语，在音乐主题下常简写作note。如：high notes为“高音符”，low notes为“低音符”。

**5. Today, the popularity of basketball has risen around the world, with many young people dreaming of becoming famous players. 如今，许多年轻人都梦想成为著名的篮球运动员，篮球在世界各地也越来越普及。**

1）此处today用作副词，修饰整个句子，并非指具体的“今天；今日”，而是表示当前的一段时间，相当于汉语“如今；当今”的意思，这与汉语“今天”一词的使用十分相似。再如：

Today, only a few kinds of these beautiful animals still live on the earth. 现今，这些美丽的动物只有少数几种还生活在地球上。

It seems to me that kids today depend more on their parents. 在我看来，如今的孩子更加依赖他们的父母。

2）本句中，介词with与在意义上有主谓关系的复合结构many young people dreaming



微信公众号：电子课本大全

of ... 构成短语，用作状语。

**6. The number of foreign players, including Chinese players, in the NBA has increased. NBA中的外国球员数量有所增加，其中也包括中国球员。**

1）此句主语的核心名词是number，表示“数量”，由于是单数形式，谓语动词需要与之相匹配，故为has increased。语法上，人们将这种主语和谓语在数上的匹配称作“主谓一致”。当主语为复数概念时，谓语动词用复数形式与之匹配；当主语为单数概念时，谓语动词则用单数形式。例如：

People there are very friendly. 那里的人们十分友善。（people为复数概念）

The United Nations is an international organization that tries to find peaceful solutions to world problems. 联合国是一个尝试寻求和平解决世界问题的国际组织。（the United Nations是一个组织，为单数概念）

2）短语the number of ... 意为“……的数量；……的数目”，如：the number of students in the class（班级人数），the number of animals（动物的数量）。The number of ... 用作主语时，其谓语动词应用单数形式。英语另有a number of ... 短语，表示“若干的；一些”，用来修饰可数名词，如：a number of students（一些学生），a number of mistakes（一些错误）。A number of ... 用作主语时，其谓语动词应用复数形式。注意不要将两者混淆。试比较：

The number of people killed in the accident hasn't been announced yet. 这次事故中死亡的人数尚未公布。

A number of people are unhappy with this decision. 一些人对这项决定并不满意。

## Unit 7 Teenagers should be allowed to choose their own clothes.

**1. No way! 不行！**

这是英语口语中一个直接拒绝对方的表达用语，强调不赞同别人的观点，或根本没有可能按其要求去做某事，具体意思类似于汉语的“不可能；不行”等。

另外，英语口语中还常用There's no way ... 这样的惯用表达，用以陈述某人无法做某事。例如：

There's no way I'm going to stay in a hotel for 800 yuan a night. That's too expensive for me. 我根本无法去住800元一晚的宾馆，那对我来说太贵了。

There is, of course, no way to know for sure. 当然，没有什么办法能够得到确切的答案。

**2. Sixteen-year-olds should be allowed to get their ears pierced. 应该允许16岁的孩子穿耳洞。**

此句中的get是使役动词，其搭配用法多种多样，这里接的是带有过去分词的复合结构。get something done是一个常见的固定搭配，常用来表达“请别人做某事；使某事完



微信公众号：电子课本大全

成（自己也可能参与）”，something与其后所接的done（过去分词）存在逻辑上的动宾关系。例如：

Go and get your hair cut. 去找人理一下发。（相当于Go and get someone to cut your hair.）

**3. When I was a tiny baby crying all night, my mom sang to me and stayed by my side. 当我还是一个整夜哭闹的小宝宝时，妈妈会给我唱歌，陪伴在我身旁。**

此句中的crying all night是一个动词-ing形式短语，用在名词baby后面作定语，起修饰名词的作用。由于本单元的语篇Mom Knows Best属于诗歌体裁，文中运用了排比的修辞手法，因此，动词-ing形式短语作后置定语的现象在文中出现了多次。在初中阶段，学生只需要理解这一结构在句子中的作用和含义即可，不必要求掌握或运用。

**4. Now I'm an adult, thinking back to those times. 现在我已长大成人，回想起那过去的岁月。**

此处名词times意指“时光；岁月；时代”。除times一词外，有时人们还会使用days表达类似含义。例如：

People started to train and use the horse in ancient times. 在古代人们就开始驯养和使用马匹了。

In those days, people used to write a lot more letters. 那时候人们更习惯写信。

**5. Only then will I have a chance to achieve my dream. 只有那样我才会有机会实现我的梦想。**

这是一个倒装句，正常语序是I will have a chance to achieve my dream only then，但由于与前文的连贯性及强调的需要，only then被置于句首。

英语的句子大多主语在前，谓语在后。但在一些句子中，由于修辞或句子结构上的需要，谓语被部分或完全置于主语之前，构成“倒装语序”。

only用于句子的开头，后接副词、介词短语或状语从句时，句子应倒装。例如：

Only yesterday did he find out that his watch was lost. 直到昨天他才发现他的手表丢了。

Only after a year did I begin to see the results of my work. 直到一年后，我才开始看到我工作的成果。

## Unit 8 It must belong to Carla.

**1. Well, where did you last put it? 那么，最后一次你把它（书包）放在哪里了呢？**

本句中last为副词，意思是“上次；最近的一次；最后一次”。last除用于句末外，还常置于句子中间。例如：

When I last saw her, she was working in Shanghai. 我上次见她时，她在上海工作。

When did you see him last? 你最近见到他是什么时候？



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**2. I think somebody must have picked it up. 我想一定有人捡到它了。**

此句情态动词must表示推测，意为“一定”。英语中当情态动词后接have done时，表达对过去的事情进行推测，故must have done something表示“过去一定做过了”这样的意思。例如：

He's playing outside. He must have finished his homework. 他在外边玩，一定已经把作业做完了。

**3. Stonehenge 巨石阵**

巨石阵位于英国伦敦西南100多公里索尔兹伯里平原上，是一处呈环形屹立的巍峨巨石建筑遗迹，也是欧洲著名的史前时代文化神庙遗址。巨石阵是如何建造的、其目的何在对现代人类来说仍是一个谜，这也正是巨石阵吸引人们之处。在英国人心目中，巨石阵是一个神圣的地方，每年都有大量的游客前往观光，感受巨石阵的神奇魅力。

**4. For many years, historians believed Stonehenge was a temple where ancient leaders tried to communicate with the gods. 多年以来，历史学家们认为巨石阵是古代首领用来与神灵沟通的一座神庙。**

此句中的where ancient leaders tried to communicate with the gods是由关系副词where引导的一个定语从句，修饰名词temple。

**5. The large stones were put together in a certain way. 这些大块的石头以某种方式被摆放在一起。**

in a certain way表示“以某种方式”，其中certain表达“某一；某个；某些”的意思，仅用于名词之前。例如：

The doctor is only at this hospital on certain days. 那位医生只有在某些日子才在这所医院里。

The library is only open at certain times of the day. 图书馆仅在一天的某些时段开放。

It's wrong and dangerous to leave children under a certain age alone in the house. 把某个年龄以下的孩子独自留在家中是不对而且危险的。

**6. As you walk there, you can feel the energy from your feet move up your body. 当你走到那儿，你能感觉到（一股）能量从你的双脚上升到你的身体里。**

此句中的feel是感官动词，其后可接宾语（the energy from your feet）和不带to的动词不定式充当的宾语补足语（move up your body），其用法与see，hear，watch等词一样。再如：

We felt the house shake. 我们感到房子在晃动。

## Unit 9 I like music that I can dance to.

**1. Hmm, depends which movie. 嗯，取决于哪部电影。**



微信公众号：电子课本大全

1）本句省略了depends前的主语it和which movie后的从句部分we'll watch，这是典型的口语表达形式。在口语和非正式场合，为保持语言简洁明了，交流者往往会省略彼此所知或逻辑上可明确推断的内容。例如：

Will come and meet you at around ten tomorrow morning. Hope you'll get everything ready. 明天上午10点左右前来见面。希望你把一切准备就绪。（省略will和hope前的主语I）

Anything I can do for you? 我能为您做些什么吗？（省略句首部分Is there）

Please hand me one of those books; I don't care which. 请把那些书递给我一本，不管哪本都行。（省略句尾部分you hand me）

2）It depends (on) who/what/how/whether ... 是一个常见句型。当depend后接短语和从句时，口语中会省略depend后的介词on，以求话语简练。例如：

It depends what day you catch me, and at what time of day. 这取决于你哪天见我，以及见我的时间。

Well, as for this matter, I can't decide for now. Depends whether or not your dad will say yes. 嗯，这件事我现在决定不了，取决于你老爸是否会同意。

**2. I just want to laugh and not think too much. 我只想笑一笑，不想过多费神思考。**

这句话中的to laugh和not think too much均为动词不定式，但后者在not和think之间省略了to。英语语句中当多个不定式结构并列使用时，to出现在第一个结构中，后面的往往会省略。再如：

She likes to sing, dance and hang out with her friends. 她喜欢唱歌、跳舞、与朋友们外出消遣。

**3. When I'm down or tired, I prefer movies that can cheer me up. 当我心情不好或疲惫时，我更爱看那些能使我高兴起来的电影。**

此句中down为形容词，表示“不高兴；心情不畅；伤心”等，仅用于连系动词之后作表语。又如：

He's been feeling a bit down ever since he got his exam results. 从他获知自己的考试成绩以来，他一直感觉有些郁闷不快。

She's been really down since her husband died. 自从她丈夫去世后，她一直都很伤心低落。

**4. The piece which was played on the *erhu* especially moved me. 那首用二胡演奏的乐曲尤其使我感动。**

此句中piece表示音乐作品，相当于汉语的“一首歌；一支乐曲”等。例如：

When he was a small boy, he could hum songs and difficult pieces of music. 当他还是个小孩子，就会哼唱歌曲和颇有难度的乐曲。



微信公众号：电子课本大全

I especially like that short piece by Beethoven. 我特别喜欢贝多芬的那首小曲。

**5. It is a pity that only six pieces of music in total were recorded for the future world to hear, but his popularity continues to this day. 遗憾的是，一共只有六首曲子被录了下来得以传世，但时至今日，他（阿炳）依旧颇受欢迎。**

popularity在此表示“声望；知名度”之意。当我们说to win popularity或to enjoy popularity即指“享盛名；得众望；受欢迎”。再如：

Country music is growing in popularity. 乡村音乐正逐渐得到更多人的喜爱。

## Unit 10 You're supposed to shake hands.

**1. I held out my hand and to my surprise, she kissed me on both sides of my face! 我伸出手来（想要握手），可令我吃惊的是，她居然亲吻了我的双颊！**

kiss为“亲吻”之意，既可作动词，也可作名词。作动词使用时，后面可接某人作宾语，若需进一步说出所亲吻的部位时，再用介词on引入，即形成kiss somebody on ... 结构，本句便是如此。再如：

Will you kiss him? 你会吻他吗？

She kissed the child on the forehead. 她吻了孩子的额头。

当kiss用作名词时，常用于give somebody a kiss on ...，例如：

She gave me a quick kiss on the cheek and said goodbye. 她在我面颊上轻快一吻，向我道别。

**2. Where I'm from, we're pretty relaxed about time. 在我们那个地方，我们的时间观念比较随意。**

此句中的where用作连词，引导地点状语从句，说明主句行为发生的地点。例如：

Where I live, there are plenty of peach trees. 在我住的地方有很多桃树。

Remember to keep the kids where you can see them. 记住让孩子们待在你能看得见的地方。

**3. We value the time we spend with our family and friends in our everyday lives. 我们特别珍惜平日生活中和家人、朋友在一起的时光。**

1）动词value表示“珍视；珍重；重视”等含义。例如：

I've always valued my teachers' advice. 我一直很重视老师们所给的建议。

2）life在此句中的意义是“生活”，用作可数名词。例如：

Many people make different kinds of friends in their social lives. 许多人在他们的社交生活中结交了各种不同的朋友。

一些常用短语和表达，如live/have/lead a ... life，常用life的单数形式。如：

She just wanted to live a quiet life. 她只想过平静的生活。



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**4. Also, we never visit a friend's house without calling first.** 而且，我们也从不事先未通电话便登门拜访朋友。

这是一个双重否定的句子，其中never和without均表示否定，合在一起表达肯定的意义，即“一定会”。这一点，英、汉两种语言表现相近。再如：

Some girls would never go out without taking time to dress themselves up. 有些女孩不花些时间穿着打扮一番是不会出门的。

You will hardly ever be able to speak good English without practicing. 你不练习几乎是不可能把英语说好的。

**5. Mind your manners!** 注意你的礼仪！

1) Mind ... 是一个警示句型，相当于汉语的“注意……；当心；小心……”。例如：

Mind your head, please! 请当心碰头！

Mind your step! 小心台阶！

2) 此句中manners意为“礼貌；规矩；礼节；礼仪”，在表达这一意义时，manner通常用复数形式。例如：

have (no) manners 讲（不讲）礼貌；有（没有）礼貌；懂（不懂）礼貌

It's bad manners to talk with your mouth full. 满嘴食物时说话是不礼貌的行为。

**6. You wouldn't believe how quickly my French has improved because of that.** 你简直都想不到就因为这样我的法语提高得有多快。

You wouldn't believe ... 是一个常用句式，相当于汉语所说的“你无法想象……；你想都想不到……；你绝不会相信……”，表示所陈述的事情超出想象之外。与此类似的表达还有You would never believe ... 或You would hardly believe ...。例如：

You wouldn't believe that he found his long-lost sister in Taiwan! 你绝对想不到他在台湾找到了失散多年的姐姐！

You would never believe what quick progress he's made ever since he attended your class. It is a miracle! 您根本无法想象，自从他听了您的讲课后进步有多大。简直是个奇迹！

**7. My biggest challenge is learning how to behave at the dinner table.** 我最大的挑战是学习餐桌礼仪。

learning how to behave at the dinner table是动词-ing形式短语，在句中作表语。再如：

His main hobby is fishing. 他的主要爱好是钓鱼。

The most important thing is getting there in time. 最重要的事是及时到达那里。

## Unit 11 Sad movies make me cry.

**1. John: Did you have fun with Amy last night?** 约翰：昨晚你和埃米玩得开心吗？



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**Tina: Well ... yes and no ...** 蒂娜：嗯，既开心又不开心……

yes and no表示对某一问题的两可回答，意思是“既是又不是；不能说定”。例如：

A: Were you surprised when you received something from Andy? 你收到安迪的东西时惊讶吗？

B: Well, yes and no. I knew he would send me something. But I just wasn't sure what it would be. 嗯，既惊讶又不惊讶。我知道他会给我送东西，但是不知道他会送什么。

**2. Mmm ... why don't you ask Alice to join you each time you do something with Julie?** 嗯……每次和朱莉在一起的时候，你何不邀请艾丽斯加入呢？

这里each time引导时间状语从句，类似each time引导时间状语从句的连词还有every time，next time等。如：

Every time I come, he is busy. 每次我来他都很忙。

Next time you go skating, please wear warm clothes. 下次滑冰要穿暖和的衣服。

**3. Then she won't feel left out.** 那么她就不会觉得自己被冷落。

to be/feel left out表示“被遗忘；被忽略；被冷落；被抛弃”之类的意思。例如：

New fathers often feel left out when their baby arrives. 当自己的孩子出生时，那些新爸爸们往往有被冷落的感觉。

If you don't catch up, you'll be left out. 如果你不抓紧赶上大家，你就会落在我们之后啦。

**4. His face was always pale as chalk.** 他总是面色苍白。

(as) pale as chalk是一种明喻修辞结构，虽然英语把苍白比作chalk（白垩，一种白色石灰岩），但汉语不可直译，相当于我们说的“惨白；苍白”。例如：

You look as pale as chalk today. What's wrong? 今天你看着面色苍白，哪里不舒服？

另外值得注意的是，汉语描述不健康的人的面部颜色时常用“白”字，如“煞白；苍白；灰白”等等，英语常用pale来表达。例如：

He suddenly went pale. 他突然面色变白。

**5. How could he have missed scoring that goal?** 他怎么没把球射进呢？

此句could have done表示“过去本能够做某事却未做”，包含“责备”意义。又如：

How could he have been such a fool? 他怎么这么糊涂？

How could she have forgotten what kind of man he was? 她怎么能忘记他是哪种人呢？

**6. But whatever it was, don't be too hard on yourself.** 但不管结果怎样，不要对自己要求太苛刻。

to be hard on somebody是一个常用短语，表示“过于严格地要求某人；对某人过于严厉”或“以刻薄的方式批评、对待某人”。例如：

Some teachers today are too hard on their students. 如今一些老师对学生的要求过于严厉。



微信公众号：电子课本大全

Perhaps I'm too hard on my daughter. 或许我对我女儿要求过头了。

**7. The next day, Peter went to soccer practice with courage rather than fear in his heart. 第二天，彼得并没有害怕，而是勇敢地去参加足球训练。**

rather than 意思是“并非；而不是”。例如：

I, rather than you, should do the work. 该做这工作的是我，而不是你。

The most valuable thing is time, rather than money. 最珍贵的是时间，而不是金钱。

**8. But I think if we continue to pull together, we're going to win the next one. 但我想只要我们继续团结一致，我们就会赢得下一场比赛。**

pull together 是一个常用短语，意思是“齐心协力；通力合作”。例如：

If all of us can pull together, there must be something we can do to improve the environment. 如果我们都能齐心协力，我们一定能做点什么来改善环境。

## Unit 12 Life is full of the unexpected.

**1. I was about to go up when I decided to get a coffee first. 我正要上楼，这时我决定先去买杯咖啡。**

be about to do something 是一种表达将来的结构。Somebody is about to do something 或 Something is about to happen 表示“某人即将做某事”或“某事就要发生”，表达的是一种眼下的、最近的将来。例如：

We were just about to set off when Kate returned with the bad news. 我们正要出发，这时凯特回来了，带来了坏消息。

Oh, I was just about to leave you a message. 噢，我正要给你写个留言条呢。

注意：be going to do something 表达对未来的“计划；打算”。例如：

We're going to have a picnic this weekend. 本周末我们打算进行一次野餐。

**2. We stared in disbelief at the black smoke rising above the burning building. 我们直愣愣地盯着燃烧着的大楼上升起的黑烟，无法相信（这一切）。**

1）stare 表示“（目不转睛地）盯着瞧；凝视”的意思，是不及物动词，用法与 look 类似，接宾语时需要用介词 at 来引入所注视的内容。例如：

What are you staring at? 你眼睛一动不动地在盯着看什么呢？

Don't stare at people like that. It's rude. 别那样盯着人看，这不礼貌。

2）介词短语 in disbelief 用来表示人们持有怀疑、疑虑的态度，常与 stare at somebody, shake one's head 等搭配使用。例如：

I stared at him in disbelief, shocked at what he had said. 我直盯着他，十分震惊，不相信他说的一切。

My grandmother shook her head in disbelief. 我奶奶摇着头，丝毫不信。



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**3. April Fool's Day 愚人节**

这是英美等英语国家一个特有的娱乐性节日。每年4月1日，朋友、熟人间往往会无中生有，编出一些玩笑来相互愚弄，人们一旦相信，便被大家嬉笑为“四月愚人”（April fool）。由于其特定的愉悦氛围和文化特质，这一节日深受大众，尤其是青年人喜爱，也逐渐流传到世界其他国家。

**4. Many April Fool's jokes may end up being not very funny. 许多愚人节玩笑的结局并不是那么有趣。**

end up意为“结束；以……告终”，后面常接介词短语或动词的-ing形式。例如：

Marley warns Scrooge to change his ways if he doesn't want to end up like him. 马利告诫斯克鲁奇，若是不想与他落得同样下场就得改变自己的行事方式。

He needs to think about what will happen if he doesn't end up as a professional runner. 他需要思考，如果最终不能成为职业赛跑运动员会怎么样。

Every time she went to see that movie, she ended up crying her eyes out. 每次她去看那部电影，最后都哭得跟泪人似的。

## Unit 13 We're trying to save the earth!

**1. So together, our actions can make a difference and lead to a better future! 因此，我们齐心协力就能带来变化，创造更加美好的未来。**

make a difference (to ...)表示“（对……）产生影响或作用”。例如：

Do you think his words would make any difference to the final decision? 你认为他的话会对最后的决定产生影响吗？

The new teacher always encourages little Tom. This has made a big difference to him. 新来的老师总是鼓励小汤姆，这对他影响很大。

**2. If their numbers drop too low, it will bring danger to all ocean life. 如果它们（鲨鱼）的数目降至过低，会给所有海洋生物带来危险。**

此句复数形式的numbers表达全球海洋中鲨鱼的总量。当表示数值的高或低时，number要用high或low修饰。例如：

In that country, the number of children going to school is higher in cities than in towns and villages. 在那个国家，城市儿童入学人数比乡镇及农村要高。

常与number搭配的动词有grow，fall等。例如：

The number of families that own cars has been growing quickly recently. 近来拥有轿车的家庭数量增长很快。

**3. Environmental protection groups around the world, such as WildAid and the WWF, are teaching the public about "finning". 世界各地的环境保护组织，如野生救援**



微信公众号：电子课本大全

协会和世界自然基金会，都在教育公众有关“猎翅”（获取鱼翅而猎杀鲨鱼）的行为。

1）英语中fin本为名词，指“鱼鳍”。此句的finning由动词化的fin（割鲨鱼鳍以获取鱼翅）的-ing形式转化而成，指课文中所陈述的“猎翅”（获取鱼翅而猎杀鲨鱼）这一行为。

2）WildAid和WWF组织

WildAid（美国野生救援协会）是保护野生动物及栖息地环境的一个非盈利性的机构，1999年注册成立，其宗旨是保护及救助世界范围内的野生动物；WWF（世界自然基金会）英文全称为World Wide Fund For Nature，成立于1961年，是享有国际盛誉、全球最大的独立性非政府环境保护组织之一。

**4. She lives in a house in the UK that she built herself out of rubbish. 她住在英国，房子是她自己用废弃物建造而成。**

that she built ... 是一个定语从句，修饰前面的名词house。

build/make ... out of ... 表示“用……建造/制作……”。例如：

This art piece is made out of glass. 这个艺术品是用玻璃做的。

**5. The top of the house is an old boat turned upside down. 房子的顶部是一条翻转过来的旧木船。**

此处过去分词短语turned upside down意为“被翻转过来的；被颠倒过来的”，用作后置定语，修饰名词boat。英语中短语和从句用作定语时，一般置于名词之后，作后置定语。例如：

the sign on the wall 墙上的标志牌（介词短语后置作定语）

the children boating on the lake 湖上泛舟的孩子们（现在分词短语后置作定语）

the stories invented by eight- and nine-year-olds 八九岁小孩子编写的故事（过去分词短语后置作定语）

a machine that can do many kinds of housework 一个能做多种家务的机器（句子后置作定语）

**6. Not only can the art bring happiness to others, but it also shows that even cold, hard iron can be brought back to life with a little creativity. 艺术不但可以给他人带来快乐，而且也说明只需要一点创造力，即便是冰冷、坚硬的铁也可产生活力。**

not only ... but also ... 是一个并列连词，相当于汉语的“不但……而且……”。例如：

Basketball has not only become a popular sport to play but it has also become a popular sport to watch. 篮球不仅成为一项人们喜欢玩的运动，也成为一项人们喜欢观看的运动。

Stonehenge is not only one of Britain's most famous historical places, but also one of its greatest mysteries. 巨石阵不仅是英国最著名的历史古迹之一，也是英国最大的未解之



微信公众号：电子课本大全

谜之一。

当not only ... but (also) ...连接两个并列分句时，not only后的分句用倒装语序。例如：

Not only did he hear it, but also he saw it. 他不但听见了，而且也看见了。

Not only does he speak English correctly, but he also speaks it fluently. 他不仅英语说得正确，还说得流利。

## Unit 14 I remember meeting all of you in Grade 7.

**1. We have learned a different language 我们学习了一种不同的语言**

**That is from a foreign land 它来自异国他乡**

这两行诗句实为一个句子，从句that is from a foreign land是language的定语，表示“一门来自异国的不同语言”。land在此指“国家”，a foreign land便是“外国”之意，但这种说法多见于诗歌或散文等文学语言中。

**2. I'm trying to keep my cool 我在尽力保持冷静**

keep one's cool意思是“保持沉着；不让自己失去控制”，cool在此用作名词。例如：

“I must keep my cool,” she thought. “Losing my temper isn't going to help.” 她想：“我要保持冷静，发脾气是不会起作用的。”

与keep one's cool意思相似的还有keep cool。如：Keep cool! 保持冷静！

注意：keep cool中的cool用作形容词，而keep one's cool中的cool为名词。

**3. As you set out on your new journey, you shouldn't forget where you came from. 在新的旅行启程之际，不应忘了你来自何处。**

1）set out on something意思是“开始进行新的或重要的事情”。例如：

When we set out on this project, we knew it would be difficult. 我们开始着手这个项目时就知道它的难处。

2）set out是一个常用短语，表示“出发”。例如：

After a three-day rest, the travelers set out again. 这些旅行者休息三天后又出发了。

3）journey的本义是“旅程”，此句里用的是它的引申义，即它的隐喻用法，意思是“（人生的）阶段或行程”。隐喻在英语中很常见，例如：

Learning is a lifelong journey. 学习是终身旅程。

Time is money. 时间就是金钱。

The book is the fruit of the couple's hard work. 这本书是这对夫妇辛苦付出的成果。



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# Tapescripts

## Unit 1 How can we become good learners?

**Section A, 1b**

*Boy*: Hey, everybody. There's a big test on Tuesday. I really need some help. Can you tell me how you study for a big test?

*Voices*: Sure! Yes. Sure we will.

*Boy*: You did really well on the last English test, didn't you, Meiping?

*Meiping*: Yeah, I did OK.

*Boy*: Well, how did you study for it?

*Meiping*: By making word cards.

*Boy*: Maybe I'll try that. So, how do you study for a test, Peter?

*Peter*: By asking the teacher for help. She's always happy to answer my questions.

*Boy*: That's interesting. How do you study, Tony?

*Tony*: I like to study by listening to tapes. But sometimes my mother thinks I'm listening to music. And then she gets mad.

*Boy*: Oh, maybe I won't do that then.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Man*: Welcome to the English club. Today we're going to talk about the best ways to learn English. Does anyone learn English by watching videos?

*Girl 1*: No. It's too hard to understand spoken English.

*Boy 1*: What about keeping a diary in English? Do you learn English that way?

*Girl 1*: Yes, I do. It helps to write English every day.

*Boy 2*: Have you ever studied with a group?

*Girl 2*: Yes, I have! I've learned a lot that way.

*Boy 2*: Do you have conversations with friends in English?

*Girl 2*: Oh, yes. It really improves my speaking skills.

*Girl 1*: What about reading aloud to practice pronunciation?

*Boy 1*: I do that sometimes. I think it helps.

*Girl 2*: I do, too. And I often look up new words in a dictionary.

*Boy 2*: That's a great idea!

**Section B, 1c, 1d**

*Ms. Manson*: You look worried, Paul.

*Paul*: I am, Ms. Manson. I'm having trouble learning English.

*Ms. Manson*: You said you liked English. What's the problem?

*Paul*: I can't get the pronunciation right.

*Ms. Manson*: Well, listening can help. Why don't you listen to English songs on the radio and repeat the



微信公众号：电子课本大全

difficult words?

*Paul*: That's a good idea. But what about all the new words? I forget a lot of the new words.

*Ms. Manson*: You can always write the new words in your notebook and review them from time to time. You can even study on the subway on the way to school.

*Paul*: That might really help! Thanks.

*Ms. Manson*: Can you understand when people talk to you?

*Paul*: Well, not always. Sometimes I just don't understand what people are saying.

*Ms. Manson*: Why don't you join an English language club to practice speaking English? The English club meets after school on Tuesdays and Thursdays.

*Paul*: Maybe I'll go. The only other problem is that I don't get much writing practice.

*Ms. Manson*: Maybe you should find a pen pal.

*Paul*: That sounds like a fun way to practice writing. Thanks, Ms. Manson.

## Unit 2 I think that mooncakes are delicious!

**Section A, 1b**

*Mary*: What a great day!

*Bill*: Yes, it was really fun!

*Mary*: What did you like best?

*Bill*: I loved the races! They were really interesting to watch. How fantastic the dragon boat teams were!

*Mary*: Yes! And look at the colors of the boats. How pretty they were!

*Bill*: I agree! But I guess it was a little too crowded.

*Mary*: I don't know ... I kind of like to have more people around. It makes things more exciting.

*Bill*: That's true. Oh, and I really liked eating *zongzi*.

*Mary*: Oh, me too! The sweet ones are my favorite.

*Bill*: I wonder if they'll have the races again next year.

*Mary*: Of course! They have them every year.

*Bill*: Then I believe that I'll be back again next year to watch the races!

*Mary*: Me, too!

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Harry*: What did you do on your vacation, Wu Ming?

*Wu Ming*: I visited my aunt and uncle in Hong Kong.

*Harry*: Wow! So what did you do?

*Wu Ming*: Well, we ate out a lot. I believe that we ate at least five meals a day! How delicious the food is! I've put on five pounds!

*Harry*: Haha! Yes, the food in Hong Kong is delicious. What else did



微信公众号：电子课本大全

you do?

*Wu Ming*: Shopping, of course. Hong Kong is a great place for shopping! I spent so much money.

*Harry*: So what was the best part of the trip?

*Wu Ming*: Oh, the Dragon Boat Festival for sure. They had teams from all over the world!

*Harry*: I'm planning a trip to Hong Kong next year. I wonder whether June is a good time.

*Wu Ming*: Yes, if you want to see the boat races. But it's quite hot in June. That's one thing I didn't like.

*Harry*: Oh, I don't mind hot weather.

*Wu Ming*: OK, then I think that June would be a perfect time for you to visit.

**Section B, 1b, 1c**

*Wu Yu*: Hey Jane, what do you know about Halloween?

*Jane*: Oh, it's a popular festival in North America.

*Wu Yu*: We don't really celebrate it in China. I know that it's in October, right?

*Jane*: Yes, October 31st. It's a scary festival, but I think it's fun!

*Wu Yu*: What do people do on that day?

*Jane*: Many people make their houses look scary. They may turn off the lights and light candles. They sometimes also put things like spiders and ghosts around the doors and windows.

*Wu Yu*: Wow, that sounds quite scary!

*Jane*: It's not that bad. Even little kids dress up as ghosts or black cats. They can also dress up as fun things like cartoon characters. Some parents join in the fun by dressing up, too!

*Wu Yu*: Do parents take their children around the neighborhood to ask for candies and treats?

*Jane*: Yeah. Kids say "Trick or treat!" at every house. This means that if you don't give them a treat, they'll play a trick on you!

*Wu Yu*: It sounds like a really fun festival! I wonder if it'll ever become popular in China.

## Unit 3 Could you please tell me where the restrooms are?

**Section A, 1b**

***Conversation 1***

*Girl*: Excuse me, could you tell me where I can buy some stamps?

*Boy*: Yes. There's a post office on Center Street.

*Girl*: Oh, could you tell me how to get to Center Street?

*Boy*: Sure. You see that bank there?

*Girl*: Hmm ... oh, yes.

*Boy*: Just go past the bank and then turn right. The post office is on the right, next to the library.

*Girl*: Thanks a lot!

***Conversation 2***

*Boy*: Excuse me, do you know where I can get a dictionary?



微信公众号：电子课本大全

*Girl*: Sure. There's a bookstore on Main Street.

*Boy*: Oh, could you please tell me how to get there?

*Girl*: Yes. Go along Center Street and then turn left on Main Street. Then you will see the bookstore on the other side of the street.

*Boy*: Thanks! Do you know when the bookstore closes today?

*Girl*: I think it closes at 7:00 p.m. today.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Boy 1*: Excuse me, can you tell me where I can buy some medicine?

*Boy 2*: Yes, there's a supermarket in this shopping center.

*Boy 1*: Do you know how to go there?

*Boy 2*: Yes. Go to the second floor and then ... then turn left. Let's see ... Then go past the bookstore. And umm ... the supermarket is between the flower store and the bookstore. You should be able to get medicine there.

*Boy 1*: OK, great. Oh, and one more thing. Do you know when this shopping center closes tonight?

*Boy 2*: I'm not sure, but you can ask for information over there.

*Boy 1*: OK, thanks a lot.

*Boy 2*: You're welcome.

**Section B, 1c, 1d**

***Conversation 1***

*Boy*: Could you tell me where there's a good place to eat?

*Clerk*: Of course. There are a lot of good restaurants in Sunville. What kind of food are you looking for?

*Boy*: I'd like fresh vegetables.

*Clerk*: I'd try Green Land. They have delicious salads.

***Conversation 2***

*Girl*: Do you know if there are any public restrooms around here?

*Clerk*: Yes. You'll find some at the corner of Market and Middle Streets.

*Girl*: Umm ... are they clean?

*Clerk*: Oh, yes. They're very clean.

***Conversation 3***

*Mother*: Could you tell me if there is a good museum in Sunville?

*Clerk*: Well, we have several. What kind of museums do you like — History? Science? A children's museum?

*Father*: What about history? I like history museums. They're fascinating.

*Girl 1*: Oh, Dad! History museums are boring. Let's go to a science museum.

*Boy*: Science? We always go to science museums. I want to go to a children's museum. They're more fun.

*Girl 2*: Well, I'm too old for a children's museum. Why don't we go to an art museum?

*Clerk*: Why don't you go to the computer museum? There are a lot of fun things for children there. You can learn all about the history of computers, as well as learn about science.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

*Mother*: That's a great idea! Let's go to the computer museum.

## Unit 4 I used to be afraid of the dark.

**Section A, 1b**

***Conversation 1***

*Bob*: Mario, is that you?

*Mario*: Yeah, it is. It's Bob! Hey guys, it's Bob! I haven't seen you for four years!

*Bob*: Yeah. I'm here with my parents. We're visiting for a couple of days. Wow, Mario, you look different! You used to be short, didn't you?

*Mario*: Yes, I did. Now I'm tall. And so are you!

*Bob*: That's true. And you used to wear glasses.

***Conversation 2***

*Bob*: Hey, Amy, it's great to see you.

*Amy*: Hi, Bob. How are you?

*Bob*: Fine. Wow, you've changed!

*Amy*: Really? How?

*Bob*: You used to have short hair.

*Amy*: You remember that? Yes, I did.

*Bob*: And you used to be really tall!

*Amy*: Not anymore. You're taller than me now, Bob.

***Conversation 3***

*Tina*: Hiya, Bob.

*Bob*: Hi, Tina. You've changed, too.

*Tina*: Oh, yeah?

*Bob*: You have blonde hair!

*Tina*: Yeah, it used to be red, didn't it?

*Bob*: And it's straight!

*Tina*: Yeah, it used to be curly.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Paula*: Hey, Steve! Over here! Don't you remember me?

*Steve*: Oh, wow! You're Paula, aren't you?

*Paula*: That's right. We were in the same science class during Grade 8.

*Steve*: Yes, now I remember. You used to be really quiet, didn't you? I remember you were always silent in class.

*Paula*: Yeah. I wasn't very outgoing. I was never brave enough to ask the teachers any questions!

*Steve*: Well, but you were always friendly. And you got a better grade in science than I did, haha. And I remember you were really good in music class, too. Wait a minute! Did you use to play the piano?

*Paula*: Yes, I did. But now I'm more interested in sports. I play soccer almost every day, and I'm on a swim team. But I still play the piano from time to time.

*Steve*: Wow, you're so active! People sure change.

**Section B, 1c, 1d**

*Girl*: My six-year-old brother started school this week.

*Boy*: Oh, that's good. Life was great when I was six.

*Girl*: Really? Why?

*Boy*: Oh, school was really easy.

*Girl*: Not for me. I didn't use to like tests. Now I don't worry about tests, but I really



微信公众号：电子课本大全

used to be very nervous about them.

*Boy*: But the tests in primary school were easy!

*Girl*: Well, yes, they weren't too difficult. But I guess I wasn't used to them yet. I think I still like high school more than primary school.

*Boy*: But we used to play every day after school. Now we just study all the time.

*Girl*: Yeah, but we used to have to wear the school uniform. Now we can wear whatever we like.

*Boy*: I don't mind wearing a school uniform. I don't like thinking about what to wear every day! I do remember one bad thing about primary school though. I used to hate P.E. class. Now I love it.

*Girl*: Oh, me, too!

## Unit 5 What are the shirts made of?

**Section A, 1b**

*Susan*: Hi, Anita. I bought three shirts for 29 dollars yesterday!

*Anita*: Oh, really? What are they made of though? Sometimes the cheap ones are made of materials that don't feel very good.

*Susan*: A hundred percent cotton. They're nice and soft, and they were made in America.

*Anita*: Oh, OK. By the way, where did you buy those chopsticks? They're really cool!

*Susan*: Oh, I got them in Korea. They're nice, aren't they?

*Anita*: Yeah. Chopsticks are usually made of wood. I've never seen steel ones before.

*Susan*: Oh, steel chopsticks are popular in Korea. Hey, do you think this ring looks OK?

*Anita*: Hmm ... yes, I think it's quite pretty. Is it made of silver?

*Susan*: Yes, and it was made in Thailand. I'll give it to my best friend for her birthday.

*Anita*: Oh, I'm sure she'll love it.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Nick*: Hey Marcus, have you heard about the art and science fair?

*Marcus*: You mean the one just outside the science museum?

*Nick*: Yeah, that's the one. The school notice board says that all students are invited to attend for free! Our school is paying for it!

*Marcus*: Wow, that's great!

*Nick*: I went there yesterday.

*Marcus*: Did you see anything cool?

*Nick*: Of course! All the works there were made by university students.

*Marcus*: What did you see?

*Nick*: I saw a huge model plane. It's made of used wood and glass. I also saw a really beautiful painting. It's made from grass, leaves and flowers.

*Marcus*: Oh, yeah, the fair is about environmental protection and recycling, right?



微信公众号：电子课本大全

*Nick*: Yes, and the students came up with some really interesting and creative ideas.

**Section B, 1b, 1c, 1d**

*Laura*: Hey, Zheng Yun!

*Zheng Yun*: Hi, Laura.

*Laura*: How was your vacation?

*Zheng Yun*: It was great! I went to Weifang in Shandong.

*Laura*: That's the city famous for kites, right?

*Zheng Yun*: Yes. There's an international kite festival there every April. That's why I went there.

*Laura*: How interesting! What happens at the festival?

*Zheng Yun*: People from all over the world compete in kite flying. There are also competitions for the best kites.

*Laura*: Were the kites nice?

*Zheng Yun*: They were beautiful. They were made of different things like silk or paper. Some were painted with colorful drawings.

*Laura*: Sounds like you really enjoyed it. I never thought that something as simple as kite flying could be so exciting.

*Zheng Yun*: Yes, it was really fun to see which kite could fly the highest.

*Laura*: I think I want to learn to fly a kite, too!

## Unit 6 When was it invented?

**Section A, 1b**

*Alice*: Was your life very difficult when you were a kid?

*Grandma*: Oh, not really. Why?

*Alice*: Well, you didn't have modern inventions like a telephone, right?

*Grandma*: Of course we did! How old do you think I am? The telephone was invented in 1876. You need to take a history class, Alice!

*Alice*: Haha! How about cars? They weren't invented yet, were they?

*Grandma*: Yes, they were. Cars were invented in 1885. My family had a car.

*Alice*: Well, did you have a TV?

*Grandma*: No, we couldn't afford one. They were expensive in those days. The TV was invented around 1927, I think.

*Alice*: Well, I know that you didn't have a computer, because we learned in school that personal computers were invented in 1971.

*Grandma*: You're right. But I have one now!

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Alex*: Hi, Carol. Wow, what are those?

*Carol*: Hello, Alex. Oh, these are some of the interesting inventions that I'm writing about for my English homework.

*Alex*: I see ... What's that, then?

*Carol*: They're shoes with lights. You use them for seeing in the dark when you



微信公众号：电子课本大全

get up at night.

*Alex*: Oh, that's a cool idea! I always hit my toe against something on the way to the bathroom at night.

*Carol*: Next is a special ice-cream scoop. This is my favorite invention. It runs on electricity and becomes hot.

*Alex*: I know what it's for! It's used for serving really cold ice-cream.

*Carol*: Yes, that's right! The last invention I'm going to write about is shoes with special heels. You can move the heels up and down.

*Alex*: What are they used for?

*Carol*: Well, you can change the style of your shoes. You can raise the heels if you are going to a party or lower them if you are just going out for shopping.

**Section B, 1c, 1d**

*Boy 1*: Hey, did you know that potato chips were invented by mistake?

*Boy 2*: Really? What do you mean?

*Boy 1*: Well, here on the bag it says that they were invented by a cook called George Crum.

*Boy 2*: When was that?

*Boy 1*: Oh, it was back in 1853.

*Boy 2*: So, why was it an accident?

*Boy 1*: Well, one day, a customer came into the restaurant where George worked. He ordered a plate of fried potatoes. When the potatoes came, he said they were cut too thick and sent them back to the kitchen.

*Boy 2*: So what happened?

*Boy 1*: Well, George was angry, so he cut the potatoes really, really thin, and he cooked them for a long time until they were crispy. And he put lots of salt on them so they were really salty. He thought the customer would hate them.

*Boy 2*: And?

*Boy 1*: And the customer loved them and asked for more. He told the other customers about them, and soon everyone was ordering thinly cut, crispy, salty potato chips.

*Boy 2*: And we're still eating them today. What a cool story!

## Unit 7 Teenagers should be allowed to choose their own clothes.

**Section A, 1b**

*Anna*: Mom, can I go to the shopping center with John? He just got his driver's license.

*Mom*: No way! I don't think sixteen-year-olds should be allowed to drive. They aren't serious enough. I'm worried about your safety.

*Anna*: But Gaby's getting her ears pierced at the shopping center and I want to watch.

*Mom*: Sixteen-year-olds shouldn't be allowed to get their ears pierced either. They're too young.

*Anna*: I agree, but it's fun to watch. Can I



微信公众号：电子课本大全

take the bus then?

*Mom*: Well, OK.

*Anna*: Great! I want to buy a new skirt, too.

*Mom*: What kind of skirt? Maybe I should go with you.

*Anna*: Aww, Mom. I'm not a child. I think teenagers should be allowed to choose their own clothes.

*Mom*: Well, I just want to make sure you get something nice.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Kathy*: Hi, Molly. Where's your brother Larry? I thought he was joining us.

*Molly*: Hi, Kathy. I'm sorry. Larry can't join us after all. He is working late tonight.

*Kathy*: Oh, Larry's working late again?

*Molly*: Yeah, he is.

*Kathy*: I see ... I really don't think sixteen-year-olds should be allowed to work at night. Young people need to sleep.

*Molly*: Oh, I disagree with you. Teenage boys never get tired.

*Kathy*: Well, maybe. But Larry shouldn't work every night.

*Molly*: That's true. He needs time to do homework.

*Kathy*: And you know, Molly ... he should really cut his hair.

*Molly*: Oh, I don't know. Do you think it's too long?

*Kathy*: Yes, I do. It doesn't look clean. And I think he should stop wearing that silly earring.

*Molly*: Hmm ... I disagree. I kind of like it. It looks cool!

*Kathy*: You know another thing that worries me? Larry doesn't seem to have many friends.

*Molly*: Yeah, I know. I think he shouldn't work on weekends.

*Kathy*: That's right. He needs to spend time with friends.

**Section B, 1c, 1d**

*Dad*: What's the matter, Peter?

*Peter*: I think I'm going to fail a math test, Dad.

*Dad*: You are? Why?

*Peter*: Well, I missed the bus and I had to walk to school.

*Dad*: So?

*Peter*: I'm not allowed to get to class late, and there was a big test today.

*Dad*: And you weren't allowed to take the test?

*Peter*: That's right. But I know I could pass that test.

*Dad*: Well, Peter, the school has to have rules, you know.

*Peter*: I know. But they should let me take the test later. It's not fair if they don't even give me a chance!

*Dad*: Well, you might still be allowed. Maybe you could talk to the teacher after school.

*Peter*: Yeah. Maybe if I explain what happened, she'll understand.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Unit 8 It must belong to Carla.

**Section A, 1b**

*Girl 1*: Whose volleyball is this?

*Boy*: It must be Carla's. She loves volleyball.

*Girl 1*: How about this toy truck?

*Girl 2*: Hmm ... that toy truck must belong to Jane's little brother. He was the only little kid at the picnic. And the magazine must belong to Deng Wen. He loves rabbits.

*Boy*: Oh, look, someone left a book.

*Girl 2*: That book must be Mary's. J.K. Rowling is her favorite writer.

*Girl 1*: OK ... and how about this CD?

*Girl 2*: Hmm ... The CD must belong to Grace. She always listens to pop music.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Bob*: Hey, look! Whose schoolbag do you think this is?

*Anna*: I don't know. Look, here's a school T-shirt.

*Bob*: Well then, the person must go to our school. Oh! Here is a hair band, so the person can't be a boy.

*Anna*: It could be Mei's hair band. She has long hair.

*Bob*: Or the hair band might belong to Linda. She was at the picnic, wasn't she?

*Anna*: Yes, she was. But then the schoolbag could belong to Rita. She's always forgetting things.

*Bob*: Oh, look! Tennis balls.

*Anna*: Then it must be Linda's schoolbag. She has long hair and she's on the tennis team.

*Bob*: You're right!

**Section B, 1b, 1c**

*Man*: Hey, look at the man running down the street. I wonder what's happening.

*Woman*: He could be running for exercise.

*Man*: But he's wearing a suit. He might be late for work.

*Woman*: He looks kind of afraid. (*pause*) Oh, no! What's that?

*Man*: Where?

*Woman*: There's something in the sky.

*Man*: It could be a plane.

*Woman*: No, it can't be a plane. It's too big. It must be a UFO.

*Man*: A UFO? What's going on?

*Woman*: Look, now the UFO is landing ...

*Man*: And there's something strange getting out. It must be an alien.

*Woman*: And the alien is running after the man! I must be dreaming.

*Man*: Maybe we should call the police. (*pause*) Hey, wait a minute. What's that?

*Woman*: Where?

*Man*: Over there.

*Woman*: It's a woman with a camera.

*Man*: She could be from the TV news.

*Woman*: No, look at all those other people. They're actors. Oh! They must be making a movie.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Unit 9 I like music that I can dance to.

**Section A, 1b**

*Betty*: Oh, look! There's the new Cool Kids CD.

*Tony*: The Cool Kids? Do you like them?

*Betty*: Oh, yeah. They're my favorite band. I like music that I can dance to.

*Tony*: You're kidding. I think they're awful. I prefer music that has great lyrics ... music that I can sing along with.

*Betty*: I like songs that I can sing along with, too. So what's your favorite band?

*Tony*: The Lions. They always have interesting lyrics.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Xu Fei*: Look, Carmen. These T-shirts are great! Look at this one.

*Carmen*: What a great T-shirt, Xu Fei! I really love the Australian singer Dan Dervish. I like musicians who play different kinds of music.

*Xu Fei*: Hmm ... I guess he's OK ...

*Carmen*: He's only OK?! You must be joking.

*Xu Fei*: Well, I like musicians who write their own songs. Dan Dervish doesn't write his own music.

*Carmen*: Hmm. Well, I think he's great.

*Xu Fei*: The Modern's T-shirt is interesting.

*Carmen*: The Modern are really great. I love electronic music that's loud.

*Xu Fei*: I know you do ... but I prefer groups that play quiet and slow songs.

**Section B, 1b, 1c**

*Ali*: Wow, you sure have lots of cool things. What a great jacket!

*Michael*: Yeah, it's new. I really like it. I like clothes that are unusual.

*Ali*: Me, too. Say ... is that a new book over there?

*Michael*: Yes, it is. It's a book about volleyball. It tells you how you can be a good player.

*Ali*: Is it good?

*Michael*: Yeah, it's great. I like writers who explain things well.

*Ali*: Me, too. Umm, Michael?

*Michael*: Yes?

*Ali*: Where did you get that movie poster?

*Michael*: Oh, my brother got it for me. He works at a movie theater.

*Ali*: Wow, you're so lucky. It's a great poster!

*Michael*: Yes, it is. I love movies that are scary. What about you?

*Ali*: I sure do. Say ... Michael ... Do you think your brother could get the same poster for me, too?

*Michael*: Probably. I'll ask him.

*Ali*: Great, thanks!

## Unit 10 You're supposed to shake hands.

**Section A, 1b**

*Yoshi*: What are people supposed to do when they meet in your country, Rodrigo?

*Rodrigo*: Do you mean when people meet for the first time?



微信公众号：电子课本大全

*Yoshi*: Yeah.
*Rodrigo*: In Mexico, we shake hands.
*Yoshi*: What about in Brazil, Celia?
*Celia*: Well, in Brazil, people sometimes kiss. How about in Japan, Yoshi? What are people expected to do when they meet for the first time?
*Yoshi*: We bow.
*Kim*: And in Korea we also bow.
*Mike*: Well, I guess in most Western countries we shake hands.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Daisy*: Hi, Maria. How was Paul's party?
*Maria*: Oh, Daisy, it was terrible.
*Daisy*: It was?
*Maria*: Uh-huh.
*Daisy*: What happened?
*Maria*: Well, I was supposed to arrive at 7:00, but I arrived at 8:00.
*Daisy*: Oh, so you were late.
*Maria*: Yeah, but in my country, it's different. When you're invited for 7:00, you're expected to come later! It's considered strange to turn up on time.
*Daisy*: I see.
*Maria*: Then when I met Paul's mom, I kissed her.
*Daisy*: Oh ... you were supposed to shake hands instead.
*Maria*: That's right. And I wore a fancy dress.
*Daisy*: What's wrong with that?
*Maria*: Well, it turned out that it was an outdoor party, Daisy. Everyone else was in a T-shirt and jeans.
*Daisy*: I guess next time you should ask what you're supposed to wear.

**Section B, 1b, 1c**

*Yang Ming*: You must be excited about leaving for China tomorrow, Steve!
*Steve*: Yeah, but I'm a little nervous, too.
*Yang Ming*: Why?
*Steve*: Well, for one thing, I don't know how to use chopsticks very well ... and I don't know how to behave at the dinner table.
*Yang Ming*: Oh, I see. Well, one important thing is that you're not supposed to start eating first if there are older people at the table.
*Steve*: That's interesting. In the United States, it doesn't matter.
*Yang Ming*: Yeah, I know. It's also impolite to stick your chopsticks into your food. You shouldn't point at anyone with your chopsticks, either.
*Steve*: Oh, OK.
*Yang Ming*: Oh, and there's one more thing you need to know. You're not supposed to talk when you're eating dinner. Only parents are expected to talk at the dinner table. Children are not allowed to speak.
*Steve*: Wow! That's ... that's unusual!
*Yang Ming*: Haha, I'm just kidding!



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Unit 11 Sad movies make me cry.

### Section A, 1b

*Tina*: I'm hungry, Amy.

*Amy*: So am I. Why don't we get something to eat?

*Tina*: Yeah. Let's go to Rockin' Restaurant. I love their hamburgers.

*Amy*: Oh, Tina ... I hate Rockin' Restaurant.

*Tina*: Why? The food is great, isn't it?

*Amy*: The food's fine. I just don't like the environment. Those awful pictures on the walls make me uncomfortable, and the loud music makes me nervous.

*Tina*: OK. So where do you want to go, Amy?

*Amy*: Let's go to Blue Ocean. The soft music makes me relax.

*Tina*: Not me. It makes me sleepy.

### Section A, 2a, 2b

*John*: Did you and Amy have fun last night, Tina?

*Tina*: Well ... yes and no.

*John*: Was Amy late as usual?

*Tina*: Yes, she was, and waiting for her drove me crazy.

*John*: Oh dear. Where did you go for dinner, then?

*Tina*: First we went to Rockin' Restaurant, but Amy didn't want to stay. She said that the loud music made her nervous.

*John*: That's funny. Loud music always makes me want to dance.

*Tina*: Me, too. So we went to Blue Ocean. It was quiet and the food was great. We had a good time.

*John*: Then did you go to the concert at the high school?

*Tina*: No. We decided to go to the movies. We saw *Remember Me Forever*. It was a really good movie, but it was so sad that it made us cry.

*John*: Sad movies don't make me cry. They just make me want to leave!

*Tina*: You sound just like my brother!

### Section B, 1c, 1d

The general searched and searched but couldn't find anyone. It seemed that everyone had their own problems, and no one was truly happy. Two days passed. Just as he was about to give up, he saw a poor man on the street. He was eating with his hands and singing happily to himself. The general went up to him.

*General*: Hello! I'm the king's top general.

*Man*: Hi, General. What can I do for you today?

*General*: I heard you singing just now, and you sound very happy.

*Man*: That's because I *am* happy.

*General*: But I don't understand. What makes you so happy? You have no power, money or fame.

*Man*: I have everything I want, and I don't want what I can't have. So I'm happy, and my song comes from the happiness in my heart.

*General*: Then I need to give your shirt to the king. Is it there in your bag? How much do you want for it?

*Man*: Shirt? What shirt? I don't own any



微信公众号：电子课本大全

shirts!

## Unit 12 Life is full of the unexpected.

**Section A, 1b**

*Boy*: Hi, Mary. You look so tired.

*Mary*: I am. I had a bad morning.

*Boy*: Really? What happened?

*Mary*: Well, first of all I overslept. By the time I got up, my brother had already gotten in the shower.

*Boy*: Oh, what a pain!

*Mary*: So, after he got out of the shower, I took a quick shower and got dressed. But by the time I went outside, the bus had already left.

*Boy*: Oh, no!

*Mary*: Oh, yes! So I ran all the way to school. But when I got to school, I realized I had left my backpack at home.

*Boy*: No wonder you look stressed.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Boy*: So then what did you do, Mary?

*Mary*: Well, I ran home to get my backpack. But when I got home, I realized I had left my keys in the backpack.

*Boy*: You're kidding!

*Mary*: So I ran back to school without my keys or my backpack. But by the time I got back to school, the bell had rung.

*Boy*: Oh, no!

*Mary*: And by the time I walked into class, the teacher had started teaching already. She asked for our homework, but of course I didn't have it.

**Section B, 1c, 1d**

*Nick*: Has someone ever tricked you on April Fool's Day, Dave?

*Dave*: Yes. A friend once invited me to a costume party. When I got there, I found that it wasn't a costume party. I was the only person wearing a costume, and I was really embarrassed. How about you, Nick?

*Nick*: Well, last April Fool's Day, when my alarm went off, I got up, took a shower, got dressed, and went to school. But when I got there, the school was empty. I was the only one there. After an hour, the other kids showed up, and I realized that my brother had fooled me.

*Dave*: He had?

*Nick*: Uh-huh. He had changed the clock to an hour earlier. What about you, Joe? What happened to you on April Fool's Day?

*Joe*: Well, my friend called me on March 31st last year and told me we had a math test the next day. By the time I got to math class, I was tired because I had stayed up all night studying. Then I found out that my friend had fooled me. We didn't have a test at all!

## Unit 13 We're trying to save the earth!

**Section A, 1b**

*Tony*: Hey, Mark, maybe we could go swimming in the river later this afternoon.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

*Mark*: I don't think I want to go, Tony.

*Tony*: Why not?

*Mark*: I was there last weekend and the river was really dirty. Even the bottom of the river was full of rubbish, and there were no more fish for fishermen to catch.

*Tony*: No way! It used to be so clean. In fact, it has always been the nicest river in this town.

*Mark*: Not anymore. I think people are throwing litter into the river. Factories are also putting waste into the river.

*Tony*: That's terrible! We should write to the government. They should close down the factories.

*Mark*: Good idea! But I think everyone in this town should help to clean up the river, too. Everyone should play a part, not just the government.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Interviewer*: Today we're talking to Jason and Susan about environmental problems. Jason and Susan, can you tell us about some of the problems you've seen?

*Jason*: I think one problem is that the air is badly polluted. I hardly ever see blue skies anymore.

*Susan*: Yes, and I used to see the stars clearly.

*Interviewer*: What do you think has caused this problem?

*Susan*: Well, there are more cars on the road these days.

*Jason*: And factories that burn coal also pollute the air with a lot of black smoke.

*Interviewer*: What other problems do you see?

*Susan*: I guess there's too much rubbish and waste in the streets.

*Jason*: Yes! Every day people are throwing away things like wooden chopsticks, plastic bowls and plastic bags.

*Susan*: They're also littering in public places, for example, during picnics in parks. This is turning beautiful places into ugly ones.

*Interviewer*: You're right. These are serious problems for our environment. Next, let's talk about the things we can do to help.

**Section B, 1c, 1d**

*Jack*: Turn off the lights, Julia. It saves electricity.

*Julia*: Oh, I usually do that. I was just in a hurry.

*Jack*: I see. I've just read a book which gives ideas about how we can save the environment. For example, you should turn off the shower when you're washing your hair.

*Julia*: Oh, I would never do that. I have very short hair. It only takes a few minutes to wash. What else does it say?

*Jack*: You should take your own bags when you go shopping.

*Julia*: Oh, that's easy. I'll do that from now



微信公众号：电子课本大全

on. What else?

*Jack*: People should stop riding in cars and start riding bikes.

*Julia*: No way! It would take me 45 minutes to get to school by bike!

*Jack*: But it's good for the environment! Besides, I like riding my bike.

*Julia*: Yes, and you also live close to school!

## Unit 14 I remember meeting all of you in Grade 7.

**Section A, 1b**

*Mary*: Hey, Frank! Peter, Sarah and I were just sharing memories of junior high school.

*Frank*: Great! Do you have any special memories, Mary?

*Mary*: Oh yeah, lots ... I remember losing my schoolbag in Grade 7.

*Frank*: I remember that! We all helped you to look for it, remember?

*Mary*: Yes, and Peter found it. Thanks for saving my life that day!

*Peter*: No problem!

*Mary*: How about you, Peter? What do you remember?

*Peter*: Hmm ... I used to be scared of Mr. Brown in Grade 8. He was so strict! I always did my homework carefully to meet his standards.

*Sarah*: Me, too. And I remember meeting all of you in Grade 7. And we've been good friends ever since, haven't we, Frank?

*Frank*: Yeah! I've enjoyed every year of junior high school.

*Peter*: And we're all going to miss this place.

**Section A, 2a, 2b**

*Lisa*: So Brian, here we are at the end of junior high.

*Brian*: Yeah, I'm so happy I don't have to do P.E. again.

*Lisa*: Oh, Brian! But we did have a great P.E. teacher. He gave us really clear instructions so that we'd be safe when playing sports.

*Brian*: Yeah, I remember Mr. Hunt was kind when I hurt my knee. He told me to take a break from running.

*Lisa*: What about you, Luke? Do you have any special memories?

*Luke*: My best memory is when That's Life played at school. Remember we wrote a letter to the band about our dream of hearing them play, and they offered to come?

*Lisa*: Yeah, that was so cool. Don't you think that junior high has been fun?

*Luke*: Yes ... and a lot of hard work, too! What are you going to do after you graduate, Lisa?

*Lisa*: I want to go to senior high and then university, so I can study medicine.

**Section B, 1c, 1d**

*Class*: Good morning, Mrs. Chen.

*Mrs. Chen*: Morning, everyone! Well, today is our last class together.

*Bob*: That makes me sad, Mrs. Chen.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

Your classes have been great.

*Mrs. Chen*: I'm glad to hear that. But the future will be exciting, too. What do you hope to do in the future, Bob?

*Bob*: I hope to pass the exam to get into senior high school.

*Shirley*: I'm going to try to get into a music school. I want to play in a band.

*Mrs. Chen*: I think you can do it, Shirley. And you, Ken? I remember you won a prize for science ...

*Ken*: Yes, last year. I'd like to be an astronaut and go into space. It would be so exciting if I could do that.

*Anna*: I'm going to improve my English so that I can teach kids English in the future.

*Mrs. Chen*: That's an excellent plan, Anna. All of you should go for it. I believe in you, all of you.

*Shirley*: Thank you, Mrs. Chen. Oh, this weekend we're celebrating the end of junior high school. We're having a party ...

*Ken*: ... and we'd like you to come!

*Mrs. Chen*: Why, of course, I'd love to! I'll bring a graduation cake.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# Grammar

## I. 动词（Verbs）

### 1. 被动语态（Passive Voice）

#### 1）主动语态和被动语态

英语动词有两种语态，即主动语态（Active Voice）和被动语态（Passive Voice）。当主语为动作的执行者时，谓语的形式为主动语态；当主语为动作的承受者时，谓语要用被动语态。例如：

Many people speak English.（主动语态，句子的主语many people是动作speak的执行者）

English is spoken by many people.（被动语态，句子的主语English是动作speak的承受者）

Bell invented the telephone in 1876.（主动语态）

The telephone was invented by Bell in 1876.（被动语态）

#### 2）被动语态的构成

被动语态由“助动词be＋及物动词的过去分词”构成。助动词be有人称、数和时态的变化，其变化规则与be作为连系动词时完全一样。现以动词ask为例，将一般现在时和一般过去时被动语态的肯定式、否定式及疑问式列表如下：

| | 肯定式 | 否定式 | 疑问式 |
|---|---|---|---|
| 一般现在时 | I am asked …<br>He/She is asked …<br>We/You/They are asked … | I am not asked …<br>He/She is not asked …<br>We/You/They are not asked … | Am I asked …?<br>Is he/she asked …?<br>Are we/you/they asked …? |
| 一般过去时 | I was asked …<br>He/She was asked …<br>We/You/They were asked … | I was not asked …<br>He/She was not asked …<br>We/You/They were not asked … | Was I asked …?<br>Was he/she asked …?<br>Were we/you/they asked …? |

#### 3）含有情态动词的被动语态

含有情态动词的被动语态由“情态动词＋be＋及物动词的过去分词”构成。例如：

Teenagers should be allowed to make their own decisions.



微信公众号：电子课本大全

Your room must be cleaned every day.

The trees may be planted behind the house.

This game can be played in the winter.

4）被动语态的用法

当我们不知道谁是动作的执行者，或者没有必要说明谁是动作的执行者，或者只需强调动作的承受者时，要用被动语态。例如：

The blouse is made of silk.

The zipper is often used in our daily lives.

I think the TV was invented after the car.

被动语态常用于陈述事实，一般用在科技文章或新闻报道中。

***2. 过去完成时（Past Perfect Tense）**

1）过去完成时的构成

过去完成时由“助动词had（用于各种人称和数）＋过去分词”构成。

2）过去完成时的用法

| 用法 | 例句 |
| --- | --- |
| 过去完成时表示在过去某一时间或动作之前已经发生或完成了的动作。它表示动作发生的时间是“过去的过去”。表示过去某一时间可用by, before等构成的短语，也可用when, before等引导的从句，或者通过上下文表示。 | By the time I got outside, the bus **had already left.**<br>When I got to school, I realized I **had left** my backpack at home.<br>The movie **had started** before I arrived at the cinema.<br>By the time I got to the airport, my flight **had already taken off.** |

注：had not常简略为hadn't。

**3. 情态动词（Modal Verbs）**

很多情态动词都可以用于表达推测，但所包含的意义不尽相同。

1）must

must表示很大的可能性，意为“一定；必定”，只用于肯定句中。

The backpack **must** belong to Carla. 那个背包肯定是卡拉的。

It's 10:00 p.m. He **must** be at home by now. 现在是晚上十点。他这会儿肯定在家。

2）can和can't

can常用于否定句或疑问句中表示惊异、怀疑、不相信等。can't表示“不大可能”。例如：

**Can** it be true? 那可能是真的吗？

What **can** he mean? 他可能是什么意思呢？



微信公众号：电子课本大全

He can't be more than 40. 他不可能超过四十岁。

I trust Joe. He can't be lying. 我信任乔。他不大可能说谎。

除了上述情态动词以外，may, might, could都能表示“可能”。could, might语气更委婉，might语气最为缓和，含义更不确定。例如：

She looks beautiful. I think she **may** be an actress. 她看起来很漂亮。我觉得她可能是个演员。

It **could** be Mei's hair band. Or it **might** belong to Linda. They both have long hair. 这有可能是梅的发带，也有可能是琳达的。她们俩都是长发。

## II. 宾语从句（Objective Clauses）

在复合句中，由一个句子充当宾语，这个句子叫作宾语从句。引导宾语从句的常见关联词有that, if, whether, what, who, where, why和how等。

| 关联词 | 例句 |
| --- | --- |
| that（在口语或非正式文体中常省略） | I think (**that**) Halloween is a fun festival.<br>Mary thinks (**that**) the teams were just fantastic.<br>Many think (**that**) sharks are too strong to be endangered. |
| whether, if（在口语中常用if） | I wonder **if/whether** they'll have the races again next year.<br>Ben wonders **if/whether** April is a good time to visit Thailand. |
| who, what, which, when, where, how, why | Could you please tell me **where** the restrooms are?<br>Do you know **when** the bookstore closes today?<br>I asked Candy **how** life was different after she became famous.<br>Can you tell me **who** she is? |

## III. 定语从句（Attributive Clauses）

在复合句中，修饰某一名词或代词的从句叫作定语从句。定语从句通常置于它修饰的名词或代词之后，被修饰的名词或代词叫先行词。例如：

I like music that I can dance to.

Carmen likes musicians who play different kinds of music.

上面两句中的music和musicians是定语从句所修饰的词，叫作先行词，定语从句放在先行词的后面。引导定语从句的词有关系代词that, which, who（宾格whom，所有格whose）和关系副词where, when, why。关系代词和关系副词放在先行词和定语从句之间，



微信公众号：电子课本大全

起联系作用，同时又作定语从句的一个成分。

由关系代词引导的定语从句：

| 关系代词 | | 例　句 |
|---|---|---|
| that在从句中作主语或宾语 | 指物或指人 | I love movies **that** are funny.（作主语）<br>April Fool's Day is a celebration **that** takes place in different countries around the world.（作主语）<br>Everything **(that)** you learn becomes a part of you and changes you.（作宾语）<br>That's the man **(that)** you are looking for.（作宾语） |
| which在从句中作主语或宾语 | 指物 | The book **which** is on the table is mine.（作主语）<br>The story **(which)** he told was very interesting.（作宾语） |
| who, whom在从句中分别作主语和宾语 | 指人 | I'd like to congratulate all the students **who** are here today.（作主语）<br>I love singers **who** write their own music.（作主语）<br>The person to **whom** you just spoke is Mr. Li.（作宾语） |

注：关系代词在句中作宾语时常可省略。

## IV. 构词法（Word Formation）

英语中很多单词的构成形式是有规律的，掌握单词的构成规律有助于理解和记忆词汇。英语的常见构词法有合成（Compounding）、派生（Derivation）和转化（Conversion）。缩写和简写（Abbreviation and Simplification）也是构词法的一种。

### 1. 合成法（Compounding）

由两个或两个以上的词合成一个新词，这种构词法叫作合成法。例如：

复合名词 classroom（名词＋名词）　　blackboard（形容词＋名词）

复合形容词 worldwide（名词＋形容词）　　good-looking（形容词＋分词）

复合动词 overcome（副词＋动词）

复合数词 fifty-four（数词＋数词）

复合代词 everything, somebody, anything（不定代词＋名词）

复合副词 downstairs（副词＋名词）

### 2. 派生法（Derivation）

在一个单词前面或后面加上一个词缀构成新词，这种构词法叫作派生法。加在单词前的词缀叫前缀，加在后面的词缀叫后缀。



微信公众号：电子课本大全

| 前　缀 | 示　例 |
|---|---|
| un-　（不、非，表示否定） | unfriendly, unpleasant, uncomfortable |
| dis-　（不、非，表示否定） | disadvantage, dishonest, disagree |
| bi-　（两个、双边的） | bicycle |
| inter-　（相互、交互、在一起） | interview, international, Internet |
| re-　（又、再、重新） | review, return, rewrite |
| tele-　（远） | telephone, television |

| 后　缀 | 示　例 |
|---|---|
| -or / -er　（从事某种职业的人，名词后缀） | actor, visitor, director, singer, runner, worker, driver |
| -ist　（人，名词后缀） | artist, scientist, tourist, terrorist |
| -ese　（民族、语言，名词后缀） | Chinese, Japanese |
| -tion　（表示动作、状态，名词后缀） | invitation, attraction, population, pronunciation |
| -ful　（充满，形容词后缀） | successful, beautiful, colorful, wonderful |
| -y　（表性质，形容词后缀） | funny, healthy, cloudy, windy |
| -ing　（形容词后缀） | boring, exciting, interesting, outstanding |
| -ed　（形容词后缀） | surprised, balanced, relaxed, talented |
| -al　（……的，形容词后缀） | traditional, international, natural |
| -able　（能够，形容词后缀） | comfortable, unforgettable |
| -less　（没有、无，形容词后缀） | homeless, helpless, careless |
| -ly　（副词或形容词后缀） | really, usually, finally, friendly |

3. **转化法（Conversion）**

一个单词由一种词类转换为另一种词类，这种构词法叫转化法。单词转化后的意义往往与之前的意义联系密切。

名词转化为动词　show *n.* 展览；展示→show *v.* 表演；展出
　　water *n.* 水　→water *v.* 浇水
形容词转化为动词　slow *adj.* 慢的　→slow *v.* 放慢
动词转化为名词　walk *v.* 散步；走　→take a walk *n.* 散步
　　look *v.* 看　→have a look *n.* 看一下，看一看

4. **缩写和简写（Abbreviation and Simplification）**

缩写和简写（也被称为截断法或缩短法）主要采取“截头”“去尾”或者“既截头又去尾”的方法来生成新词。例如：

telephone → phone　airplane → plane　laboratory → lab
mathematics → math　advertisement → ad　examination → exam
influenza → flu



微信公众号：电子课本大全

另外，还有很多缩写词是由各个单词的首字母组成，例如：

CD (compact disk)

CCTV (China Central Television)

NBA (National Basketball Association)

UFO (unidentified flying object)

UN (United Nations)

USA (United States of America)

WWF (World Wide Fund for Nature or World Wildlife Fund)



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# Words and Expressions in Each Unit

（注：在本词表中，重点词汇用黑体标出。
在英式和美式发音有区别时，英式发音在前，美式发音在后。）

## Unit 1

**textbook** /'tekstbʊk/ *n.* 教科书；课本 p.1
**conversation** /ˌkɒnvə'seɪʃn/, /ˌkɑːnvər'seɪʃn/ *n.* 交谈；谈话 p.2
**aloud** /ə'laʊd/ *adv.* 大声地；出声地 p.2
**pronunciation** /prəˌnʌnsi'eɪʃn/ *n.* 发音；读音 p.2
**sentence** /'sentəns/ *n.* 句子 p.2
**patient** /'peɪʃnt/ *adj.* 有耐心的 *n.* 病人 p.2
**expression** /ɪk'spreʃn/ *n.* 表情；表示；表达方式 p.3
**discover** /dɪ'skʌvə(r)/ *v.* 发现；发觉 p.3
**secret** /'siːkrət/ *n.* 秘密；秘诀 *adj.* 秘密的；保密的 p.3
look up（在词典、参考书中或通过电脑）查阅；抬头看 p.3
**grammar** /'græmə(r)/ *n.* 语法 p.3
**repeat** /rɪ'piːt/ *v.* 重复；重做 p.4
**note** /nəʊt/ *n.* 笔记；记录 *v.* 注意；指出 p.4
pal /pæl/ *n.* 朋友；伙伴 p.4
**physics** /'fɪzɪks/ *n.* 物理；物理学 p.4
**chemistry** /'kemɪstri/ *n.* 化学 p.4
memorize /'meməraɪz/ *v.* 记忆；记住 p.4
pattern /'pætn/, /'pætərn/ *n.* 模式；方式 p.4
**pronounce** /prə'naʊns/ *v.* 发音 p.5
**increase** /ɪn'kriːs/ *v.* 增加；增长 p.5
**speed** /spiːd/ *n.* 速度 p.5
**partner** /'pɑː(r)tnə(r)/ *n.* 搭档；同伴 p.5
**born** /bɔː(r)n/ *v.* 出生 *adj.* 天生的 p.6
be born with 天生具有 p.6
**ability** /ə'bɪlətɪ/ *n.* 能力；才能 p.6
**create** /kri'eɪt/ *v.* 创造；创建 p.6
**brain** /breɪn/ *n.* 大脑 p.6
**active** /'æktɪv/ *adj.* 活跃的；积极的 p.6
**attention** /ə'tenʃn/ *n.* 注意；关注 p.6
pay attention to 注意；关注 p.6
**connect** /kə'nekt/ *v.*（使）连接；与……有联系 p.6
connect ... with 把……和……连接或联系起来 p.6
overnight /ˌəʊvə(r)'naɪt/ *adv.* 一夜之间；在夜间 p.6
**review** /rɪ'vjuː/ *v.* & *n.* 回顾；复习 p.6
**knowledge** /'nɒlɪdʒ/, /'nɑːlɪdʒ/ *n.* 知识；学问 p.6
lifelong /'laɪflɒŋ/ *adj.* 终身的；毕生的 p.6
**wisely** /'waɪzli/ *adv.* 明智地；聪明地 p.6

Annie /'æni/ 安妮（女名） p.2
Alexander /ˌælɪg'zændə(r)/ Graham /'greɪəm/ Bell /bel/ 亚历山大·格雷厄姆·贝尔 p.6



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Unit 2

mooncake /'mu:nkeɪk/ *n.* 月饼 p.9
lantern /'læntə(r)n/ *n.* 灯笼 p.9
**stranger** /'streɪndʒə(r)/ *n.* 陌生人 p.10
**relative** /'relətɪv/ *n.* 亲属；亲戚 p.10
put on 增加（体重）；发胖 p.10
**pound** /paʊnd/ *n.* 磅（重量单位）；英镑（英国货币单位） p.10
folk /fəʊk/ *adj.* 民间的；民俗的 p.11
goddess /'gɒdes/, /'gɑ:dəs/ *n.* 女神 p.11
whoever /hu:'evə(r)/ *pron.* 无论谁；不管什么人 p.11
**steal** /sti:l/ *v.* (stole /stəʊl/, stolen /'stəʊlən/) 偷；窃取 p.11
**lay** /leɪ/ *v.* (laid /leɪd/, laid) 放置；安放；产（卵）；下（蛋） p.11
lay out 摆开；布置 p.11
**dessert** /dɪ'zɜ:(r)t/ *n.*（饭后）甜点；甜食 p.11
**garden** /'gɑ:(r)dn/ *n.* 花园；园子 p.11
tradition /trə'dɪʃn/ *n.* 传统 p.11
**admire** /əd'maɪə(r)/ *v.* 欣赏；仰慕 p.11
**tie** /taɪ/ *n.* 领带 *v.* 捆；束 p.12
haunted /'hɔ:ntɪd/ *adj.* 有鬼魂出没的；闹鬼的 p.13
ghost /gəʊst/ *n.* 鬼；鬼魂 p.13
trick /trɪk/ *n.* 花招；把戏 p.13
**treat** /tri:t/ *n.* 款待；招待 *v.* 招待；请（客） p.13
spider /'spaɪdə(r)/ *n.* 蜘蛛 p.13
**Christmas** /'krɪsməs/ *n.* 圣诞节 p.14
**lie** /laɪ/ *v.* (lay /leɪ/, lain /leɪn/) 存在；平躺；处于 p.14
**novel** /'nɒvl/, /'nɑ:vl/ *n.*（长篇）小说 p.14
eve /i:v/ *n.* 前夕；前夜 p.14
**dead** /ded/ *adj.* 死的；失去生命的 p.14
**business** /'bɪznəs/ *n.* 生意；商业 p.14
**punish** /'pʌnɪʃ/ *v.* 处罚；惩罚 p.14
**warn** /wɔ:(r)n/ *v.* 警告；告诫 p.14
end up 最终成为；最后处于 p.14
**present** /'preznt/ *n.* 现在；礼物 *adj.* 现在的 p.14
**warmth** /wɔ:(r)mθ/ *n.* 温暖；暖和 p.14
**spread** /spred/ *v.*（spread, spread）传播；展开 *n.* 蔓延；传播 p.14

Macao /mə'kaʊ/ 澳门 p.10
Chiang Mai /tʃi,æŋ'maɪ/ 清迈（泰国城市） p.10

Water Festival 泼水节 p.9
Mid-Autumn /,mɪd'ɔ:təm/ Festival 中秋节 p.11
Mother's Day 母亲节 p.12
Father's Day 父亲节 p.12
Halloween /,hæləʊ'i:n/ 万圣节前夕 p.13
*A Christmas Carol* /'kærəl/《圣诞欢歌》（小说名） p.14
Easter /'i:stə(r)/ 复活节 p.16

Clara /'klɑ:rə/, /'klerə/ 克拉拉（女名） p.10
Santa /'sæntə/ Claus /klɔ:z/ 圣诞老人 p.14
Charles /tʃɑ:(r)lz/ Dickens /'dɪkɪnz/ 查尔斯·狄更斯（英国作家） p.14
Scrooge /skru:dʒ/ 斯克鲁奇 *n.*（非正式）吝啬鬼 p.14
Jacob /'dʒeɪkəb/ Marley /'mɑ:(r)li/ 雅各布·马利 p.14



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Unit 3

**restroom** /'restru:m/
*n.*（美）洗手间；公共厕所 p.17

**stamp** /stæmp/ *n.* 邮票；印章 p.17

bookstore /'bʊkstɔ:(r)/ *n.* 书店 p.17

**beside** /bɪ'saɪd/ *prep.* 在……旁边；在……附近 p.17

**postcard** /'pəʊstkɑ:(r)d/ *n.* 明信片 p.18

**pardon** /'pɑ:(r)dn/ *v.* 原谅
*interj.* 请再说一遍 p.18

washroom /'wɒʃru:m/, /'wɑ:ʃru:m/
*n.* 洗手间；厕所 p.18

**bathroom** /'bɑ:θru:m/, /'bæθru:m/
*n.* 浴室；洗手间 p.18

normally /'nɔ:(r)məli/ *adv.* 通常；正常情况下 p.18

**rush** /rʌʃ/ *v.* & *n.* 仓促；急促 p.18

**suggest** /sə'dʒest/ *v.* 建议；提议 p.19

pass by 路过；经过 p.19

staff /stɑ:f/, /stæf/ *n.* 管理人员；职工 p.19

**grape** /greɪp/ *n.* 葡萄 p.20

**central** /'sentrəl/ *adj.* 中心的；中央的 p.20

nearby /ˌnɪə'baɪ/ *adj.* 附近的；邻近的
*adv.* 在附近；附近 p.20

pardon me 抱歉，对不起；什么，请再说一遍 p.20

**mail** /meɪl/ *v.* 邮寄；发电子邮件
*n.* 邮件；信件 p.20

**east** /i:st/ *adj.* 东方的；东部的
*adv.* 向东；朝东 *n.* 东；东方 p.20

fascinating /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/
*adj.* 迷人的；极有吸引力的 p.21

inexpensive /ˌɪnɪk'spensɪv/
*adj.* 不昂贵的 p.21

uncrowded /ʌn'kraʊdɪd/
*adj.* 不拥挤的；人少的 p.21

**convenient** /kən'vi:niənt/
*adj.* 便利的；方便的 p.21

mall /mɔ:l/ *n.* 商场；购物中心 p.21

clerk /klɑ:k/, /klɜ:rk/ *n.* 职员 p.21

**corner** /'kɔ:(r)nə(r)/ *n.* 拐角；角落 p.21

**politely** /pə'laɪtli/ *adv.* 礼貌地；客气地 p.22

**request** /rɪ'kwest/
*n.* & *v.* 要求；请求 p.22

**direction** /də'rekʃn, daɪ'rekʃn/
*n.* 方向；方位 p.22

**correct** /kə'rekt/ *adj.* 正确的；恰当的 p.22

**polite** /pə'laɪt/ *adj.* 有礼貌的；客气的 p.22

**direct** /də'rekt, daɪ'rekt/ *adj.* 直接的；直率的 p.22

**speaker** /'spi:kə(r)/
*n.* 讲（某种语言）的人；发言者 p.22

**whom** /hu:m/ *pron.* 谁；什么人 p.22

**impolite** /ˌɪmpə'laɪt/
*adj.* 不礼貌的；粗鲁的 p.22

**address** /ə'dres/, /'ædres/ *n.* 住址；地址；通讯处 p.22

**underground** /'ʌndə(r)graʊnd/
*adj.* 地下的 *n.* 地铁 p.22

parking lot 停车场；停车区 p.22

**course** /kɔ:(r)s/ *n.* 课程；学科 p.23

Italian /ɪ'tæliən/ *adj.* 意大利（人）的
*n.* 意大利人；意大利语 p.20



微信公众号：电子课本大全

Tim /tɪm/ 蒂姆（男名） p.20

## Unit 4

**humorous** /'hju:mərəs/ *adj.* 有幽默感的；滑稽有趣的 p.26
**silent** /'saɪlənt/ *adj.* 不说话的；沉默的 p.26
**helpful** /'helpfl/ *adj.* 有用的；有帮助的 p.26
from time to time 时常；有时 p.26
**score** /skɔ:(r)/ *n.* & *v.* 得分；进球 p.26
**background** /'bækgraʊnd/ *n.* 背景 p.27
**interview** /'ɪntə(r)vju:/ *v.* 采访；面试 *n.* 面试；访谈 p.27
**Asian** /'eɪʃn, 'eɪʒn/ *adj.* 亚洲（人）的 *n.* 亚洲人 p.27
**deal** /di:l/ *v.*（dealt /delt/, dealt）对付；对待 p.27
deal with 应对；处理 p.27
shyness /'ʃaɪnəs/ *n.* 害羞；腼腆 p.27
**dare** /deə/, /der/ *v.* 敢于；胆敢 p.27
crowd /kraʊd/ *n.* 人群；观众 p.27
**ton** /tʌn/ *n.* 吨；(*pl.*) 大量；许多 p.27
**private** /'praɪvət/ *adj.* 私人的；私密的 p.27
**guard** /gɑ:(r)d/ *n.* 警卫；看守 *v.* 守卫；保卫 p.27
**require** /rɪ'kwaɪə(r)/ *v.* 需要；要求 p.27
**European** /ˌjʊ(ə)rə'pi:ən/ *adj.* 欧洲（人）的 *n.* 欧洲人 p.28
**African** /'æfrɪkən/ *adj.* 非洲（人）的 *n.* 非洲人 p.28
**British** /'brɪtɪʃ/ *adj.* 英国（人）的 p.28
**speech** /spi:tʃ/ *n.* 讲话；发言 p.28
**public** /'pʌblɪk/ *n.* 民众 *adj.* 公开的；公众的 p.28
in public 公开地；在别人（尤指生人）面前 p.28
**ant** /ænt/ *n.* 蚂蚁 p.29
insect /'ɪnsekt/ *n.* 昆虫 p.29
**seldom** /'seldəm/ *adv.* 不常；很少 p.30
**influence** /'ɪnfluəns/ *v.* & *n.* 影响 p.30
**absent** /'æbsənt/ *adj.* 缺席；不在 p.30
**fail** /feɪl/ *v.* 不及格；失败；未能（做到） p.30
**examination** /ɪgˌzæmɪ'neɪʃn/ *n.* 考试；审查 p.30
boarding /'bɔ:(r)dɪŋ/ school 寄宿学校 p.30
in person 亲身；亲自 p.30
**exactly** /ɪg'zæktli/ *adv.* 确切地；精确地 p.30
**pride** /praɪd/ *n.* 自豪；骄傲 p.30
take pride in 为……感到自豪 p.30
**proud** /praʊd/ *adj.* 自豪的；骄傲的 p.30
be proud of 为……骄傲；感到自豪 p.30
**general** /'dʒenrəl/ *adj.* 总的；普遍的；常规的 *n.* 将军 p.32
**introduction** /ˌɪntrə'dʌkʃn/ *n.* 介绍 p.32

Paula /'pɔ:lə/ 葆拉（女名） p.26
Alfred /'ælfrɪd/ 艾尔弗雷德（男名） p.26
Billy /'bɪli/ 比利（男名） p.26
Candy /'kændi/ 坎迪（女名） p.27
Jerry /'dʒeri/ 杰里（男名）；杰丽（女名） p.28
Emily /'emɪli/ 埃米莉（女名） p.28



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## Unit 5

**chopstick** /'tʃɒpstɪk/, /'tʃɑ:pstɪk/ *n.* 筷子 p.33
**coin** /kɔɪn/ *n.* 硬币 p.33
**fork** /fɔ:(r)k/ *n.* 餐叉；叉子 p.33
**blouse** /blaʊz/, /blaʊs/ *n.*（女式）短上衣；衬衫 p.33
**silver** /'sɪlvə(r)/ *n.* 银；银器 *adj.* 银色的 p.33
**glass** /glɑ:s/, /glæs/ *n.* 玻璃 p.33
**cotton** /'kɒtn/, /'kɑ:tn/ *n.* 棉；棉花 p.33
**steel** /sti:l/ *n.* 钢；钢铁 p.33
**fair** /feə(r)/, /fer/ *n.* 展览会；交易会 p.34
environmental /ɪnˌvaɪrən'mentl/ *adj.* 自然环境的；有关环境的 p.34
**grass** /grɑ:s/, /græs/ *n.* 草；草地 p.34
**leaf** /li:f/ *n.*（*pl.* leaves /li:vz/）叶；叶子 p.34
**produce** /prə'dju:s/, /prə'du:s/ *v.* 生产；制造；出产 p.34
**widely** /'waɪdli/ *adv.* 广泛地；普遍地 p.34
be known for 以……闻名；为人知晓 p.34
**process** /'prəʊses/ *v.* 加工；处理 *n.* 过程 p.34
pack /pæk/ *v.* 包装；装箱 p.34
**product** /'prɒdʌkt/, /'prɑ:dʌkt/ *n.* 产品；制品 p.35
**France** /frɑ:ns/, /fræns/ 法国 p.35
no matter 不论；无论 p.35
**local** /'ləʊkl/ *adj.* 当地的；本地的 p.35
brand /brænd/ *n.* 品牌；牌子 p.35
**avoid** /ə'vɔɪd/ *v.* 避免；回避 p.35
**handbag** /'hændbæg/ *n.* 小手提包 p.35
**mobile** /'məʊbaɪl/, /'məʊbl/ *adj.* 可移动的；非固定的 p.35
**everyday** /'evrideɪ/ *adj.* 每天的；日常的 p.35
**boss** /bɒs/, /bɔ:s/ *n.* 老板；上司 p.36
**Germany** /'dʒɜ:(r)məni/ 德国 p.36
**surface** /'sɜ:(r)fɪs/ *n.* 表面；表层 p.36
**material** /mə'tɪəriəl/ *n.* 材料；原料 p.36
**traffic** /'træfɪk/ *n.* 交通；路上行驶的车辆 p.36
**postman** /'pəʊstmən/ *n.* 邮递员 p.36
**cap** /kæp/ *n.*（尤指有帽舌的）帽子 p.36
**glove** /glʌv/ *n.*（分手指的）手套 p.36
**international** /ˌɪntə(r)'næʃnəl/ *adj.* 国际的 p.37
competitor /kəm'petɪtə(r)/ *n.* 参赛者；竞争者 p.37
**its** /ɪts/ *adj.* 它的 p.38
**form** /fɔ:(r)m/ *n.* 形式；类型 p.38
clay /kleɪ/ *n.* 黏土；陶土 p.38
celebration /ˌselɪ'breɪʃn/ *n.* 庆典；庆祝活动 p.38
**balloon** /bə'lu:n/ *n.* 气球 p.38
paper cutting 剪纸 p.38
**scissors** /'sɪzə(r)z/ *n.* (*pl.*) 剪刀 p.38
**lively** /'laɪvli/ *adj.* 生气勃勃的；（色彩）鲜艳的 p.38
fairy /'feəri/, /'feri/ tale /teɪl/ 童话故事 p.38
historical /hɪ'stɒrɪkl/, /hɪ'stɔ:rɪkl/ *adj.*（有关）历史的 p.38
**heat** /hi:t/ *n.* 热；高温 *v.* 加热；变热 p.38



微信公众号：电子课本大全

polish /'pɒlɪʃ/, /'pɑ:lɪʃ/
*v.* 磨光；修改；润色 p.38
**complete** /kəm'pli:t/ *v.* 完成 p.38

Korea /kə'ri:ə/ 朝鲜；韩国 p.33
Switzerland /'swɪtsə(r)lənd/ 瑞士 p.35
San Francisco /ˌsæn frən'sɪskəʊ/
圣弗朗西斯科
（旧金山，美国城市） p.35

Marcus /'mɑ:(r)kəs/ 马库斯（男名） p.34
Pam /pæm/ 帕姆（女名） p.34

## Unit 6

heel /hi:l/ *n.* 鞋跟；足跟 p.42
scoop /sku:p/ *n.* 勺；铲子 p.42
electricity /ɪˌlek'trɪsəti/ *n.* 电；电能 p.42
**style** /staɪl/ *n.* 样式；款式 p.42
**project** /'prɒdʒekt/, /'prɑ:dʒekt/
*n.* 项目；工程 p.42
**pleasure** /'pleʒə(r)/ *n.* 高兴；愉快 p.42
zipper /'zɪpə(r)/ *n.* (= zip) 拉链；
拉锁 p.42
**daily** /'deɪli/ *adj.* 每日的；日常的 p.42
have a point 有道理 p.42
**website** /'websaɪt/ *n.* 网站 p.42
**pioneer** /ˌpaɪə'nɪə/, /ˌpaɪə'nɪr/
*n.* 先锋；先驱 p.42
**list** /lɪst/ *v.* 列表；列清单
*n.* 名单；清单 p.42
**mention** /'menʃn/ *v.* 提到；说到 p.42
accidental /ˌæksɪ'dentl/ *adj.* 意外的；
偶然的 p.43
by accident 偶然；意外地 p.43
**ruler** /'ru:lə/ *n.* 统治者；支配者 p.43
**boil** /bɔɪl/ *v.* 煮沸；烧开 p.43
**remain** /rɪ'meɪn/ *v.* 保持不变；剩余 p.43
**smell** /smel/ *n.* 气味
*v.*（smelt /smelt/, smelt; smelled,
smelled）发出……气味；闻到 p.43
saint /seɪnt/ *n.* 圣人；圣徒 p.43
**national** /'næʃnəl/ *adj.* 国家的；
民族的 p.43
**trade** /treɪd/ *n.* 贸易；交易
*v.* 做买卖；从事贸易 p.43
take place 发生；出现 p.43
popularity /ˌpɒpju'lærəti/,
/ˌpɑ:pju'lærəti/
*n.* 受欢迎；普及 p.43
**doubt** /daʊt/ *n.* 疑惑；疑问 *v.* 怀疑 p.43
without doubt 毫无疑问；的确 p.43
**fridge** /frɪdʒ/ *n.* 冰箱 p.44
**low** /ləʊ/ *adj.* 低的；矮的 p.44
**somebody** /'sʌmbədi/
*pron.* 某人 *n.* 重要人物 p.44
**translate** /træns'leɪt/ *v.* 翻译 p.44
**lock** /lɒk/, /lɑ:k/ *v.* 锁上；锁住
*n.* 锁 p.44
**ring** /rɪŋ/ *v.*（rang /ræŋ/, rung /rʌŋ/）
（使）发出钟声或铃声；打电话 p.44
**earthquake** /'ɜ:(r)θkweɪk/ *n.* 地震 p.44
**sudden** /'sʌdən/ *adj.* 突然（的） p.44
all of a sudden 突然；猛地 p.44
**bell** /bel/ *n.* 钟（声）；铃（声） p.44
**biscuit** /'bɪskɪt/ *n.* 饼干 p.44
**cookie** /'kʊki/ *n.* 曲奇饼 p.44
**musical** /'mju:zɪkl/ *adj.* 音乐的；
有音乐天赋的 p.44



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**instrument** /'ɪnstrəmənt/ *n.* 器械；仪器；工具 p.44
crispy /'krɪspi/ *adj.* 脆的；酥脆的 p.45
salty /'sɔ:lti/ *adj.* 咸的 p.45
**sour** /'saʊə(r)/ *adj.* 酸的；有酸味的 p.45
by mistake 错误地；无意中 p.45
**customer** /'kʌstəmə(r)/ *n.* 顾客；客户 p.45
**the Olympics** /ə'lɪmpɪks/ 奥林匹克运动会 p.46
**Canadian** /kə'neɪdiən/ *adj.* 加拿大的；加拿大人的 *n.* 加拿大人 p.46
**divide** /dɪ'vaɪd/ *v.* 分开；分散 p.46
divide ... into 把……分开 p.46
**basket** /'bɑ:skɪt/, /'bæskɪt/ *n.* 篮；筐 p.46
not only ... but also ... 不但……而且…… p.46
look up to 钦佩；仰慕 p.46
**hero** /'hɪərəʊ/, /'hɪrəʊ/ *n.* 英雄；男主角 p.46
professional /prə'feʃənl/ *adj.* 职业的；专业的 p.47
**nearly** /'nɪəli/, /'nɪrli/ *adv.* 几乎 p.48

Berlin /bɜ:(r)'lɪn/ 柏林（德国城市） p.46
NBA (National Basketball Association) 国家篮球协会（美国职业篮球联赛） p.46
CBA (China Basketball Association) 中国篮球协会（中国职业篮球联赛） p.46

Roy /rɔɪ/ 罗伊（男名） p.42
Whitcomb /'wɪtkəm/ Judson /'dʒʌdsən/ 惠特科姆·贾德森 p.42
Ruby /'ru:bi/ 鲁比（女名） p.44
Thomas /'tɒməs/ Watson /'wɒtsən/ 托马斯·沃森 p.44
George /dʒɔ:(r)dʒ/ Crum /krʌm/ 乔治·克拉姆 p.45
James /dʒeɪmz/ Naismith /'neɪsmɪθ/ 詹姆斯·奈史密斯 p.46

## Unit 7

**license** /'laɪsns/ *n.* (= licence) 证；证件 p.49
**safety** /'seɪfti/ *n.* 安全；安全性 p.49
**smoke** /sməʊk/ *v.* 吸烟；冒烟 *n.* 烟 p.49
part-time /ˌpɑ:(r)t 'taɪm/ *adj.* & *adv.* 兼职（的） p.49
pierce /pɪəs/, /pɪrs/ *v.* 扎；刺破；穿透 p.49
earring /'ɪərɪŋ/, /'ɪrɪŋ/ *n.* 耳环；耳饰 p.50
flash /flæʃ/ *n.* 闪光灯；闪光 *v.* 闪耀；闪光 p.50
**tiny** /'taɪni/ *adj.* 极小的；微小的 p.51
**cry** /kraɪ/ *v.* & *n.* 哭；叫喊 p.51
**field** /fi:ld/ *n.* 田野；场地 p.51
**hug** /hʌg/ *n.* & *v.* 拥抱；搂抱 p.51
**lift** /lɪft/ *v.* 举起；抬高 *n.* 电梯；搭便车 p.51
**badly** /'bædli/ *adv.* 严重地；差；非常 p.51
talk back 回嘴；顶嘴 p.51
**awful** /'ɔ:fl/ *adj.* 很坏的；讨厌的 p.51
teen /ti:n/ *n.*（13至19岁之间的）青少年 p.51
**regret** /rɪ'gret/ *v.* & *n.* 感到遗憾；懊悔 p.51



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**poem** /'pəʊɪm/ *n.* 诗；韵文 p.51
**community** /kə'mju:nəti/ *n.* 社区；社团 p.52
keep ... away from 避免接近；远离 p.52
**chance** /tʃɑ:ns/, /tʃæns/ *n.* 机会；可能性 p.52
make one's own decision 自己做决定 p.52
**educate** /'edʒukeɪt/ *v.* 教育；教导 p.52
**manage** /'mænɪdʒ/ *v.* 完成（困难的事）；应付（困难局面） p.52
**society** /sə'saɪəti/ *n.* 社会 p.52
get in the way of 挡……的路；妨碍 p.54
**support** /sə'pɔ:(r)t/ *v.* & *n.* 支持 p.54
**enter** /'entə(r)/ *v.* 进来；进去 p.54
**choice** /tʃɔɪs/ *n.* 选择；挑选 p.54

Picasso /pɪ'kæsəʊ/, /pɪ'kɑ:səʊ/ 毕加索（西班牙画家） p.50

## Unit 8

**whose** /hu:z/ *adj.* & *pron.* 谁的 p.57
**truck** /trʌk/ *n.* 卡车；货车 p.57
**picnic** /'pɪknɪk/ *n.* 野餐 p.57
**rabbit** /'ræbɪt/ *n.* 兔；野兔 p.57
**attend** /ə'tend/ *v.* 出席；参加 p.58
**valuable** /'væljuəbl/ *adj.* 贵重的；很有用的；宝贵的 p.58
**pink** /pɪŋk/ *adj.* 粉红色的
*n.* 粉红色 p.58
**anybody** /'enibɒdi/, /'enibɑ:di/ *pron.* 任何人 p.58
happening /'hæpənɪŋ/ *n.* 事件；发生的事情（常指不寻常的） p.59
**noise** /nɔɪz/ *n.* 声音；噪音 p.59
**policeman** /pə'li:smən/ *n.*（*pl.* policemen）男警察 p.59
**wolf** /wʊlf/ *n.* 狼 p.59
uneasy /ʌn'i:zi/ *adj.* 担心的；不安的 p.59
**laboratory** /lə'bɒrətri/, /'læbrətɔ:ri/ *n.* 实验室 p.60
outdoors /ˌaʊt'dɔ:(r)z/ *adv.* 在户外；在野外 p.60
**coat** /kəʊt/ *n.* 外套；外衣 p.60
**sleepy** /'sli:pi/ *adj.* 困倦的；瞌睡的 p.60
**land** /lænd/ *v.* 着陆；降落 p.61
alien /'eɪliən/ *n.* 外星人 p.61
run after 追逐；追赶 p.61
**suit** /sju:t/, /su:t/ *n.* 西服；套装
*v.* 适合 p.61
**express** /ɪk'spres/ *v.* 表示；表达 p.62
at the same time 同时；一起 p.62
**circle** /'sɜ:(r)kl/ *n.* 圆圈 *v.* 圈出 p.62
**Britain** /'brɪtn/ (= Great Britain) 大不列颠 p.62
mystery /'mɪstri/ *n.* 奥秘；神秘事物 p.62
**receive** /rɪ'si:v/ *v.* 接待；接受；收到 p.62
historian /hɪ'stɔ:riən/ *n.* 历史学家；史学工作者 p.62
temple /'templ/ *n.* 庙宇；寺院；圣殿 p.62
**leader** /'li:də(r)/ *n.* 领导；领袖 p.62
midsummer /ˌmɪd'sʌmə(r)/ *n.* 仲夏；中夏 p.62
**medical** /'medɪkl/ *adj.* 医疗的；医学的 p.62
**purpose** /'pɜ:(r)pəs/ *n.* 目的；目标 p.62
**prevent** /prɪ'vent/ *v.* 阻止；阻挠 p.62
**energy** /'enə(r)dʒi/ *n.* 力量；精力 p.62
**position** /pə'zɪʃn/ *n.* 位置；地方 p.62



微信公众号：电子课本大全

burial /'beriəl/ *n.* 埋葬；安葬 p.62
honor /'ɒnə/, /'ɑːnər/ (=honour)
*v.* 尊重；表示敬意 *n.* 荣幸；荣誉 p.62
ancestor /'ænsestə(r)/ *n.* 祖宗；祖先 p.62
**victory** /'vɪktəri/ *n.* 胜利；成功 p.62
**enemy** /'enəmi/ *n.* 敌人；仇人 p.62
**period** /'pɪəriəd/, /'pɪriəd/
*n.* 一段时间；时期 p.62

Stonehenge /ˌstəʊn'hendʒ/ 巨石阵 p.62

Carla /'kɑː(r)lə/ 卡拉（女名） p.57
J. K. Rowling /'rəʊlɪŋ/
J. K. 罗琳（英国作家） p.57
Victor /'vɪktə(r)/ 维克托（男名） p.59
Jean /dʒiːn/ 琼（女名） p.60
Paul Stoker /'stəʊkə(r)/
保罗·斯托克 p.62

## Unit 9

**prefer** /prɪ'fɜː(r)/ *v.* 更喜欢 p.65
lyrics /'lɪrɪks/ *n.* (*pl.*) 歌词 p.65
**Australian** /ɒ'streɪliən, ɔː'streɪliən/
*adj.* 澳大利亚（人）的
*n.* 澳大利亚人 p.66
**electronic** /ɪˌlek'trɒnɪk/, /ɪˌlek'trɑːnɪk/
*adj.* 电子的；电子设备的 p.66
**suppose** /sə'pəʊz/ *v.* 推断；料想 p.66
**smooth** /smuːð/ *adj.* 悦耳的；平滑的 p.66
**spare** /speə/, /sper/ *adj.* 空闲的；
不用的 *v.* 抽出；留出 p.66
**director** /də'rektə(r), daɪ'rektə(r)/
*n.* 导演；部门负责人 p.66
**case** /keɪs/ *n.* 情况；实情 p.66
in that case 既然那样；假使那样的话 p.66
**war** /wɔː(r)/ *n.* 战争；战争状态 p.66
**stick** /stɪk/ *v.* (stuck /stʌk/, stuck)
粘贴；将……刺入 p.67
stick to 坚持；固守 p.67
**down** /daʊn/ *adj.* 悲哀；沮丧 p.67
**dialog** /'daɪəlɒg/, /'daɪəlɑːg/ *n.*
(=dialogue) 对话；对白 p.67
ending /'endɪŋ/ *n.*（故事、电影等的）
结尾；结局 p.67
documentary /ˌdɒkju'mentri/,
/ˌdɑːkju'mentri/ *n.* 纪录片 p.67
drama /'drɑːmə/ *n.* 戏；剧 p.67
**plenty** /'plenti/ *pron.* 大量；众多 p.67
plenty of 大量；充足 p.67
**shut** /ʃʌt/ *v.* (shut, shut) 关闭；关上 p.67
shut off 关闭；停止运转 p.67
superhero /'suːpə(r)ˌhɪərəʊ/
*n.* 超级英雄 p.67
once in a while 偶尔地；间或 p.67
intelligent /ɪn'telɪdʒənt/
*adj.* 有才智的；聪明的 p.68
**sense** /sens/ *v.* 感觉到；意识到
*n.* 感觉；意识 p.70
**sadness** /'sædnəs/ *n.* 悲伤；悲痛 p.70
**pain** /peɪn/ *n.* 痛苦；疼痛；苦恼 p.70
**reflect** /rɪ'flekt/ *v.* 反映；映出 p.70
moving /'muːvɪŋ/ *adj.* 动人的；
令人感动的 p.70
**perform** /pə(r)'fɔː(r)m/ *v.* 表演；
执行 p.70
lifetime /'laɪftaɪm/ *n.* 一生；
有生之年 p.70
**pity** /'pɪti/ *n.* 遗憾；怜悯
*v.* 同情；怜悯 p.70



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**total** /'təʊtl/ *n.* 总数；合计
*adj.* 总的；全体的 p.70
in total 总共；合计 p.70
**master** /'mɑːstə/, /'mæstər/
*n.* 大师；能手；主人 *v.* 掌握 p.70
**praise** /preɪz/ *v.* & *n.* 表扬；赞扬 p.70
recall /rɪ'kɔːl/ *v.* 回忆起；回想起 p.70
**wound** /wuːnd/ *n.* 伤；伤口；创伤
*v.* 使（身体）受伤；伤害 p.70
**painful** /'peɪnfl/ *adj.* 令人痛苦的；
令人疼痛的 p.70

World War II 第二次世界大战 p.66
*Men in Black*《黑衣人》（电影名） p.67
*Kung Fu Panda*《功夫熊猫》（电影名） p.67
*Titanic* /taɪ'tænɪk/
《泰坦尼克号》（电影名） p.67
*March of the Penguins* /'peŋgwɪnz/
《帝企鹅日记》（电影名） p.67
*Spider-Man*《蜘蛛侠》（电影名） p.67

Carmen /'kɑː(r)men/ 卡门（女名） p.66
Dan /dæn/ Dervish /'dɜː(r)vɪʃ/
丹·德维什 p.66

## Unit 10

custom /'kʌstəm/ *n.* 风俗；习俗 p.73
bow /baʊ/ *v.* & *n.* 鞠躬 p.73
**kiss** /kɪs/ *v.* & *n.* 亲吻；接吻 p.73
**greet** /griːt/ *v.* 和……打招呼；迎接 p.74
**relaxed** /rɪ'lækst/ *adj.* 放松的；
自在的 p.75
**value** /'væljuː/ *v.* 重视；珍视
*n.* 价值 p.75
drop by 顺便访问；随便进入 p.75
**capital** /'kæpɪtl/ *n.* 首都；国都 p.75
after all 毕竟；终归 p.75
**noon** /nuːn/ *n.* 正午；中午 p.75
**mad** /mæd/ *adj.* 很生气；疯的 p.75
get mad 大动肝火；气愤 p.75
**effort** /'efə(r)t/ *n.* 努力；尽力 p.75
make an effort 作出努力 p.75
**passport** /'pɑːspɔːt/, /'pæspɔːrt/
*n.* 护照 p.76
clean ... off 把……擦掉 p.76
**chalk** /tʃɔːk/ *n.* 粉笔 p.76
**blackboard** /'blækbɔː(r)d/ *n.* 黑板 p.76
**northern** /'nɔː(r)ðə(r)n/
*adj.* 北方的；北部的 p.76
**coast** /kəʊst/ *n.* 海岸；海滨 p.76
**season** /'siːzn/ *n.* 季；季节 p.76
**knock** /nɒk/, /nɑːk/ *v.* 敲；击
*n.* 敲击声；敲击 p.76
**eastern** /'iːstə(r)n/ *adj.* 东方的；
东部的 p.76
take off 脱下（衣服）；
（飞机等）起飞 p.76
**worth** /wɜː(r)θ/ *adj.* 值得；
有……价值（的） p.76
**manner** /'mænə(r)/ *n.* 方式；方法
(*pl.*) 礼貌；礼仪 p.76
**empty** /'empti/ *adj.* 空的；空洞的 p.77
**basic** /'beɪsɪk/ *adj.* 基本的；基础的 p.78
**exchange** /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/ *n.* & *v.* 交换 p.78
go out of one's way
特地；格外努力 p.78
make ... feel at home
使（某人）感到宾至如归 p.78



微信公众号：电子课本大全

teenage /'ti:neɪdʒ/ *adj.* 十几岁的；青少年的 p.78
**granddaughter** /'grændɔ:tə(r)/ *n.*（外）孙女 p.78
**behave** /bɪ'heɪv/ *v.* 表现；举止 p.78
**except** /ɪk'sept/ *prep.* 除……之外 *conj.* 除了；只是 p.78
elbow /'elbəʊ/ *n.* 肘；胳膊 p.78
gradually /'grædʒuəli/ *adv.* 逐步地；渐进地 p.78
get used to 习惯于 p.78
**suggestion** /sə'dʒestʃən/ *n.* 建议 p.80

Brazil /brə'zɪl/ 巴西 p.73
Mexico /'meksɪkəʊ/ 墨西哥 p.73
Cali /'kɑ:li/ 卡利（哥伦比亚城市） p.75
Colombia /kə'lʌmbɪə/ 哥伦比亚（南美洲国家） p.75
Lausanne /ləʊ'zæn/, /ləʊ'zɑ:n/ 洛桑（瑞士城市） p.75
Norway /'nɔ:(r)weɪ/ 挪威 p.76

Maria /mə'ri:ə/ 玛丽亚（女名） p.74
Katie /'keɪti/ 凯蒂（女名） p.74
Sato /'sɑ:təʊ/ 佐藤（日本姓氏） p.74
Marie /mə'ri:/ 玛丽（女名） p.74
Teresa /tə'ri:zə/, /tə'reɪzə/ Lopez /'ləʊpez/ 特蕾莎·洛佩斯 p.75
Marc /mɑ:(r)k/ LeBlanc /lə'blɑ:ŋ/ 马克·勒布朗 p.75

## Unit 11

rather /'rɑ:ðə/, /'ræðər/ *adv.* 相当；相反 p.81
would rather（通常缩写为'd rather）宁愿 p.81
**drive** /draɪv/ *v.* 迫使 p.82
drive sb. crazy/mad 使人发疯/发狂 p.82
the more ... the more ... 越……越……；愈……愈…… p.82
lately /'leɪtli/ *adv.* 最近；不久前 p.82
be friends with sb. 成为某人的朋友 p.82
leave out 忽略；不提及；不包括 p.82
**friendship** /'frendʃɪp/ *n.* 友谊；友情 p.82
**king** /kɪŋ/ *n.* 国王；君主 p.83
**power** /'paʊə(r)/ *n.* 权力；力量 p.83
prime /praɪm/ *adj.* 首要的；基本的 p.83
minister /'mɪnɪstə(r)/ *n.* 大臣；部长 p.83
prime minister 首相；大臣 p.83
**banker** /'bæŋkə(r)/ *n.* 银行家 p.83
fame /feɪm/ *n.* 名声；声誉 p.83
**pale** /peɪl/ *adj.* 苍白的；灰白的 p.83
**queen** /kwi:n/ *n.* 王后；女王 p.83
call in 召来；叫来 p.83
**examine** /ɪg'zæmɪn/ *v.*（仔细地）检查；检验 p.83
**nor** /nɔ:(r)/ *conj.* & *adv.* 也不 p.83
neither ... nor ... 既不……也不…… p.83
**palace** /'pæləs/ *n.* 王宫；宫殿 p.83
**wealth** /welθ/ *n.* 财富 p.83
to start with 起初；开始时 p.84
**grey** /greɪ/ *adj.*（天空）阴沉的；昏暗的；灰色的 p.84
**lemon** /'lemən/ *n.* 柠檬 p.84
**uncomfortable** /ʌn'kʌmfə(r)təbl/ *adj.* 使人不舒服的；令人不舒适的 p.84
**weight** /weɪt/ *n.* 重量；分量 p.86
**shoulder** /'ʃəʊldə(r)/ *n.* 肩；肩膀 p.86



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**goal** /gəʊl/ *n.* 球门；射门；目标 p.86
let ... down 使失望 p.86
**coach** /kəʊtʃ/ *n.* 教练；私人教师 p.86
**kick** /kɪk/ *v.* 踢；踹 p.86
kick sb. off 开除某人 p.86
be hard on sb. 对某人苛刻；对某人要求严厉 p.86
besides /bɪ'saɪdz/ *adv.* 而且 p.86
teammate /'tiːmmeɪt/ *n.* 同队队员；队友 p.86
**courage** /'kʌrɪdʒ/, /'kɜːrɪdʒ/ *n.* 勇敢；勇气 p.86
rather than 而不是 p.86
guy /gaɪ/ *n.*（非正式）家伙 (*pl.*) 伙计们 p.86
**pull** /pʊl/ *v.* 拉；拖 p.86
pull together 齐心协力；通力合作 p.86
relief /rɪ'liːf/ *n.* 轻松；解脱 p.86
**nod** /nɒd/, /nɑːd/ *v.* 点头 p.86
**agreement** /ə'griːmənt/ *n.*（意见或看法）一致；同意 p.86
fault /fɔːlt/ *n.* 过失；缺点 p.86
**disappoint** /ˌdɪsə'pɔɪnt/ *v.* 使失望 p.87

Bert /bɜː(r)t/ 伯特（男名） p.82
Holly /'hɒli/, /'hɑːli/ 霍莉（女名） p.84

## Unit 12

**unexpected** /ˌʌnɪk'spektɪd/ *adj.* 出乎意料的；始料不及的 p.89
by the time ... 在……以前 p.89
**backpack** /'bækpæk/ *n.* 背包；旅行包 p.89
**oversleep** /ˌəʊvə(r)'sliːp/ *v.* (overslept /ˌəʊvə(r)'slept/, overslept) 睡过头；睡得太久 p.89
give ... a lift 捎……一程 p.90
**block** /blɒk/, /blɑːk/ *n.* 街区 p.91
in line with 与……成一排 p.91
**worker** /'wɜː(r)kə(r)/ *n.* 工作者；工人 p.91
stare /steə/, /ster/ *v.* 盯着看；凝视 p.91
disbelief /ˌdɪsbɪ'liːf/ *n.* 不信；怀疑 p.91
**above** /ə'bʌv/ *prep.* 在……上面 *adv.* 在上面 p.91
**burn** /bɜː(r)n/ *v.* (burnt /bɜː(r)nt/, burnt; burned /bɜː(r)nd/, burned) 着火；燃烧 p.91
burning /'bɜː(r)nɪŋ/ *adj.* 着火的；燃烧的 p.91
**alive** /ə'laɪv/ *adj.* 活着；有生气的 p.91
**airport** /'eəpɔː(r)t/ *n.* 机场 p.91
**till** /tɪl/ *prep.* & *conj.* 到；直到 p.91
**west** /west/ *adv.* 向西；朝西 *adj.* 向西的；西部的 *n.* 西；西方 p.91
**cream** /kriːm/ *n.* 奶油；乳脂 p.92
workday/'wɜː(r)kdeɪ/ *n.* 工作日 p.92
show up 赶到；露面 p.92
**bean** /biːn/ *n.* 豆；豆荚 p.92
**market** /'mɑː(r)kɪt/ *n.* 市场；集市 p.92
by the end of 在（某时间点）以前 p.92
**fool** /fuːl/ *n.* 蠢人；傻瓜 *v.* 愚弄 p.93
costume /'kɒstjuːm/, /'kɑːstuːm/ *n.*（特定场合穿的）服装；装束 p.93



微信公众号：电子课本大全

embarrassed /ɪm'bærəst/ *adj.* 窘迫的；害羞的 p.93
costume party 化装舞会 p.93
announce /ə'naʊns/ *v.* 宣布；宣告 p.94
spaghetti /spə'geti/ *n.* 意大利面条 p.94
hoax /həʊks/ *n.* 骗局；恶作剧 p.94
sell out 卖光 p.94
**discovery** /dɪ'skʌvəri/ *n.* 发现；发觉 p.94
**lady** /'leɪdi/ *n.* 女士；女子 p.94
**cancel** /'kænsl/ *v.* 取消；终止 p.94
**officer** /'ɒfɪsə/, /'ɑːfɪsər/ *n.* 军官；官员 p.94
**believable** /bɪ'liːvəbl/ *adj.* 可相信的；可信任的 p.95
**disappear** /ˌdɪsə'pɪə/ *v.* 消失；不见 p.95
embarrassing /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/ *adj.* 使人害羞的（难堪的或惭愧的） p.95

New Zealand /ˌnjuː'ziːlənd/ 新西兰 p.91
Italy /'ɪtəli/ 意大利 p.94
Mars /mɑː(r)z/ 火星 p.94

Matt /mæt/ 马特（男名） p.90
Kevin /'kevɪn/ 凯文（男名） p.90
Carl /kɑː(r)l/ 卡尔（男名） p.90
Orson /'ɔː(r)sən/ Welles /welz/ 奥森·韦尔斯 p.94

## Unit 13

**litter** /'lɪtə(r)/ *v.* 乱扔 *n.* 垃圾；废弃物 p.97
**bottom** /'bɒtəm/, /'bɑːtəm/ *n.* 底部；最下部 p.97
**fisherman** /'fɪʃə(r)mən/ *n.* 渔民；钓鱼的人 p.97
**coal** /kəʊl/ *n.* 煤；煤块 p.98
**ugly** /'ʌgli/ *adj.* 丑陋的；难看的 p.98
**advantage** /əd'vɑːntɪdʒ/, /əd'væntɪdʒ/ *n.* 优点；有利条件 p.98
**cost** /kɒst/, /kɔːst/ *v.* (cost, cost) 花费 *n.* 花费；价钱 p.98
**wooden** /'wʊdn/ *adj.* 木制的；木头的 p.98
**plastic** /'plæstɪk/ *adj.* 塑料的 *n.* 塑料；塑胶 p.98
takeaway /'teɪkəweɪ/ *n.* 外卖食物 p.98
bin /bɪn/ *n.* 垃圾箱 p.98
shark /ʃɑː(r)k/ *n.* 鲨鱼 p.99
fin /fɪn/ *n.*（鱼）鳍 p.99
**cruel** /'kruːəl/ *adj.* 残酷的；残忍的 p.99
**harmful** /'hɑː(r)mfl/ *adj.* 有害的 p.99
be harmful to 对……有害 p.99
at the top of 在……顶部或顶端 p.99
chain /tʃeɪn/ *n.* 链子；链条 p.99
the food chain 食物链 p.99
ecosystem /'iːkəʊˌsɪstəm/ *n.* 生态系统 p.99
**industry** /'ɪndəstri/ *n.* 工业；行业 p.99
**law** /lɔː/ *n.* 法律；法规 p.99
**scientific** /ˌsaɪən'tɪfɪk/ *adj.* 科学上的；科学的 p.99
take part in 参加 p.100
**afford** /ə'fɔː(r)d/ *v.* 承担得起（后果）；买得起 p.100
turn off 关掉 p.100
reusable /ˌriː'juːzəbl/ *adj.* 可重复使用的；可再次使用的 p.100
pay for 付费；付出代价 p.100



微信公众号：电子课本大全

take action 采取行动 p.100
transportation /ˌtrænspɔː(r)'teɪʃn/ *n.* 运输业；交通运输 p.100
**recycle** /ˌriː'saɪkl/ *v.* 回收利用；再利用 p.101
napkin /'næpkɪn/ *n.* 餐巾；餐巾纸 p.101
throw away 扔掉；抛弃 p.102
put sth. to good use 好好利用某物 p.102
pull ... down 拆下；摧毁 p.102
upside /'ʌpsaɪd/ down 上下颠倒；倒转 p.102
**gate** /geɪt/ *n.* 大门 p.102
**bottle** /'bɒtl/, /'bɑːtl/ *n.* 瓶子 p.102
**president** /'prezɪdənt/ *n.* 负责人；主席；总统 p.102
inspiration /ˌɪnspə'reɪʃn/ *n.* 灵感；鼓舞人心的人（或事物） p.102
iron /'aɪən/ *n.* 铁 p.102
**work** /wɜː(r)k/ *n.*（音乐、艺术）作品 p.102
**metal** /'metl/ *n.* 金属 p.102
bring back 恢复；使想起；归还 p.102
creativity /ˌkriːeɪ'tɪvəti/ *n.* 创造力；独创性 p.102

WildAid /'waɪldeɪd/ 野生救援协会（美国） p.99
WWF (World Wide Fund for Nature) 世界自然基金会 p.99

Jason /'dʒeɪsən/ 贾森（男名） p.98
Hayes /heɪz/ 海斯（姓） p.102
Jessica /'dʒesɪkə/ 杰西卡（女名） p.102

## Unit 14

**survey** /'sɜː(r)veɪ/ *n.* 调查 p.105
**standard** /'stændə(r)d/ *n.* 标准；水平 p.105
**row** /rəʊ/ *n.* 一排；一列；一行 p.105
in a row 连续几次地 p.105
**keyboard** /'kiːbɔː(r)d/ *n.* 键盘式电子乐器；键盘 p.105
**method** /'meθəd/ *n.* 方法；措施 p.106
**instruction** /ɪn'strʌkʃn/ *n.* 指示；命令 p.106
**double** /'dʌbl/ *v.* 加倍；是……的两倍 *adj.* 两倍的；加倍的 p.106
**shall** /ʃæl, ʃəl/ *modal v.* 将要；将会 p.106
look back at 回首（往事）；回忆；回顾 p.107
**overcome** /ˌəʊvə(r)'kʌm/ *v.* (overcame /ˌəʊvə(r)'keɪm/, overcome) 克服；战胜 p.107
make a mess 弄得一团糟（一塌糊涂） p.107
graduate /'grædʒueɪt/ *v.* 毕业；获得学位 p.107
keep one's cool 沉住气；保持冷静 p.107
**caring** /'keərɪŋ/ *adj.* 体贴人的；关心他人的 p.107
**ours** /'aʊə(r)z/ *pron.* 我们的 p.107
**senior** /'siːniə(r)/ *adj.* 级别（或地位）高的 p.108
senior high (school) 高中 p.108
**text** /tekst/ *n.* 课文；文本 p.108
go by（时间）逝去；过去 p.108
**level** /'levl/ *n.* 水平 p.108



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**degree** /dɪ'griː/ *n.*（大学）学位；度数；程度 p.109
**manager** /'mænɪdʒə(r)/ *n.* 经理；经营者 p.109
believe in 信任；信赖 p.109
**gentleman** /'dʒentlmən/ *n.* 先生；绅士 p.110
graduation /ˌgrædʒu'eɪʃn/ *n.* 毕业 p.110
ceremony /'serəməni/ *n.* 典礼；仪式 p.110
first of all 首先 p.110
**congratulate** /kən'grætʃuleɪt/ *v.* 祝贺 p.110
**thirsty** /'θɜː(r)sti/ *adj.* 渴望的；口渴的 p.110
be thirsty for 渴望；渴求 p.110
**thankful** /'θæŋkfəl/ *adj.* 感谢；感激 p.110
be thankful to sb. 对某人心存感激 p.110
lastly /'lɑːstli/, /'læstli/ *adv.* 最后 p.110
**task** /tɑːsk/, /tæsk/ *n.* 任务；工作 p.110
**ahead** /ə'hed/ *adv.* 向前面；在前面 p.110
ahead of 在……前面 p.110
along with 连同；除……以外还 p.110
responsible /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/, /rɪ'spɑːnsəbl/ *adj.* 有责任心的 p.110
be responsible for 对……有责任；负责任 p.110
**separate** /'sepərət/ *adj.* 单独的；分离的 /'sepəreɪt/ *v.* 分开；分离 p.110
set out 出发；启程 p.110
separate from 分离；隔开 p.111
**wing** /wɪŋ/ *n.* 翅膀；翼 p.111

Luke /luːk/ 卢克（男名） p.106
Brian /'braɪən/ 布赖恩（男名） p.106
Griffin /'grɪfɪn/ 格里芬（姓） p.106
Trent /trent/ 特伦特（姓） p.108



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# Vocabulary Index

（注：在本词表中，重点词汇用黑体标出。
在英式发音和美式发音有区别时，英式发音在前，美式发音在后。）


## A

**ability** /ə'bɪlətɪ/ *n.* 能力；才能 p.6
**above** /ə'bʌv/ *prep.* 在……上面
*adv.* 在上面 p.91
**absent** /'æbsənt/ *adj.* 缺席；不在 p.30
accidental /ˌæksɪ'dentl/ *adj.* 意外的；偶然的 p.43
**active** /'æktɪv/ *adj.* 活跃的；积极的 p.6
**address** /ə'dres/, /'ædres/ *n.* 住址；地址；通讯处 p.22
**admire** /əd'maɪə(r)/ *v.* 欣赏；仰慕 p.11
**advantage** /əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ/, /əd'væntɪdʒ/
*n.* 优点；有利条件 p.98
**afford** /ə'fɔ:(r)d/ *v.* 承担得起（后果）；买得起 p.100
**African** /'æfrɪkən/ *adj.* 非洲（人）的
*n.* 非洲人 p.28
after all 毕竟；终归 p.75
**agreement** /ə'gri:mənt/
*n.*（意见或看法）一致；同意 p.86
**ahead** /ə'hed/ *adv.* 向前面；在前面 p.110
ahead of 在……前面 p.110
**airport** /'eəpɔ:(r)t/ *n.* 机场 p.91
alien /'eɪlɪən/ *n.* 外星人 p.61
**alive** /ə'laɪv/ *adj.* 活着；有生气的 p.91
all of a sudden 突然；猛地 p.44
along with 连同；除……以外还 p.110
**aloud** /ə'laʊd/ *adv.* 大声地；出声地 p.2
ancestor /'ænsestə(r)/ *n.* 祖宗；祖先 p.62
announce /ə'naʊns/ *v.* 宣布；宣告 p.94
**ant** /ænt/ *n.* 蚂蚁 p.29
**anybody** /'enɪbɒdɪ/, /'enɪbɑ:dɪ/
*pron.* 任何人 p.58
**Asian** /'eɪʃn, 'eɪʒn/ *adj.* 亚洲（人）的
*n.* 亚洲人 p.27
**attend** /ə'tend/ *v.* 出席；参加 p.58
**attention** /ə'tenʃn/ *n.* 注意；关注 p.6
at the same time 同时；一起 p.62
at the top of 在……顶部或顶端 p.99
**Australian** /ɒ'streɪlɪən, ɔ:'streɪlɪən/
*adj.* 澳大利亚（人）的
*n.* 澳大利亚人 p.66
**avoid** /ə'vɔɪd/ *v.* 避免；回避 p.35
**awful** /'ɔ:fl/ *adj.* 很坏的；讨厌的 p.51

## B

**background** /'bækgraʊnd/ *n.* 背景 p.27
**backpack** /'bækpæk/ *n.* 背包；旅行包 p.89
**badly** /'bædlɪ/ *adv.* 严重地；差；非常 p.51
**balloon** /bə'lu:n/ *n.* 气球 p.38
**banker** /'bæŋkə(r)/ *n.* 银行家 p.83
**basic** /'beɪsɪk/ *adj.* 基本的；基础的 p.78
**basket** /'bɑ:skɪt/, /'bæskɪt/
*n.* 篮；筐 p.46
**bathroom** /'bɑ:θru:m/, /'bæθru:m/
*n.* 浴室；洗手间 p.18




微信公众号：电子课本大全

be born with 天生具有 p.6
be friends with sb. 成为某人的朋友 p.82
be hard on sb. 对某人苛刻；对某人要求严厉 p.86
be harmful to 对……有害 p.99
be known for 以……闻名；为人知晓 p.34
be proud of 为……骄傲；感到自豪 p.30
be responsible for 对……有责任；负责任 p.110
be thankful to sb. 对某人心存感激 p.110
be thirsty for 渴望；渴求 p.110
**bean** /biːn/ *n.* 豆；豆荚 p.92
**behave** /bɪ'heɪv/ *v.* 表现；举止 p.78
**bell** /bel/ *n.* 钟（声）；铃（声） p.44
**believable** /bɪ'liːvəbl/ *adj.* 可相信的；可信任的 p.95
believe in 信任；信赖 p.109
**beside** /bɪ'saɪd/ *prep.* 在……旁边；在……附近 p.17
besides /bɪ'saɪdz/ *adv.* 而且 p.86
bin /bɪn/ *n.* 垃圾箱 p.98
**biscuit** /'bɪskɪt/ *n.* 饼干 p.44
**blackboard** /'blækbɔː(r)d/ *n.* 黑板 p.76
**block** /blɒk/, /blɑːk/ *n.* 街区 p.91
**blouse** /blaʊz/, /blaʊs/ *n.*（女式）短上衣；衬衫 p.33
boarding /'bɔː(r)dɪŋ/ school 寄宿学校 p.30
**boil** /bɔɪl/ *v.* 煮沸；烧开 p.43
bookstore /'bʊkstɔː(r)/ *n.* 书店 p.17
**born** /bɔː(r)n/ *v.* 出生 *adj.* 天生的 p.6
**boss** /bɒs/, /bɔːs/ *n.* 老板；上司 p.36
**bottle** /'bɒtl/, /'bɑːtl/ *n.* 瓶子 p.102
**bottom** /'bɒtəm/, /'bɑːtəm/ *n.* 底部；最下部 p.97
bow /baʊ/ *v.* & *n.* 鞠躬 p.73
**brain** /breɪn/ *n.* 大脑 p.6
brand /brænd/ *n.* 品牌；牌子 p.35
**Britain** /'brɪtn/ (= Great Britain) 大不列颠 p.62
bring back 恢复；使想起；归还 p.102
**British** /'brɪtɪʃ/ *adj.* 英国（人）的 p.28
burial /'beriəl/ *n.* 埋葬；安葬 p.62
**burn** /bɜː(r)n/ *v.* (burnt /bɜː(r)nt/, burnt; burned /bɜː(r)nd/, burned) 着火；燃烧 p.91
burning /'bɜː(r)nɪŋ/ *adj.* 着火的；燃烧的 p.91
**business** /'bɪznəs/ *n.* 生意；商业 p.14
by accident 偶然；意外地 p.43
by mistake 错误地；无意中 p.45
by the end of 在（某时间点）以前 p.92
by the time ... 在……以前 p.89


## C


call in 召来；叫来 p.83
**Canadian** /kə'neɪdiən/ *adj.* 加拿大的；加拿大人的 *n.* 加拿大人 p.46
**cancel** /'kænsl/ *v.* 取消；终止 p.94
**cap** /kæp/ *n.*（尤指有帽舌的）帽子 p.36
**capital** /'kæpɪtl/ *n.* 首都；国都 p.75
**caring** /'keərɪŋ/ *adj.* 体贴人的；关心他人的 p.107
**case** /keɪs/ *n.* 情况；实情 p.66
celebration /ˌselɪ'breɪʃn/ *n.* 庆典；庆祝活动 p.38
**central** /'sentrəl/ *adj.* 中心的；中央的 p.20
ceremony /'serəməni/ *n.* 典礼；仪式 p.110




微信公众号：电子课本大全

chain /tʃeɪn/ *n.* 链子；链条 p.99
**chalk** /tʃɔːk/ *n.* 粉笔 p.76
**chance** /tʃɑːns/, /tʃæns/ *n.* 机会；可能性 p.52
**chemistry** /ˈkemɪstri/ *n.* 化学 p.4
**choice** /tʃɔɪs/ *n.* 选择；挑选 p.54
**chopstick** /ˈtʃɒpstɪk/, /ˈtʃɑːpstɪk/ *n.* 筷子 p.33
**Christmas** /ˈkrɪsməs/ *n.* 圣诞节 p.14
**circle** /ˈsɜː(r)kl/ *n.* 圆圈 *v.* 圈出 p.62
clay /kleɪ/ *n.* 黏土；陶土 p.38
clean ... off 把……擦掉 p.76
clerk /klɑːk/, /klɜːrk/ *n.* 职员 p.21
**coach** /kəʊtʃ/ *n.* 教练；私人教师 p.86
**coal** /kəʊl/ *n.* 煤；煤块 p.98
**coast** /kəʊst/ *n.* 海岸；海滨 p.76
**coat** /kəʊt/ *n.* 外套；外衣 p.60
**coin** /kɔɪn/ *n.* 硬币 p.33
**community** /kəˈmjuːnəti/ *n.* 社区；社团 p.52
competitor /kəmˈpetɪtə(r)/ *n.* 参赛者；竞争者 p.37
**complete** /kəmˈpliːt/ *v.* 完成 p.38
**congratulate** /kənˈgrætʃuleɪt/ *v.* 祝贺 p.110
**connect** /kəˈnekt/ *v.*（使）连接；与……有联系 p.6
connect ... with 把……和……连接或联系起来 p.6
**convenient** /kənˈviːniənt/ *adj.* 便利的；方便的 p.21
**conversation** /ˌkɒnvəˈseɪʃn/, /ˌkɑːnvərˈseɪʃn/ *n.* 交谈；谈话 p.2
**cookie** /ˈkʊki/ *n.* 曲奇饼 p.44
**corner** /ˈkɔː(r)nə(r)/ *n.* 拐角；角落 p.21
**correct** /kəˈrekt/ *adj.* 正确的；恰当的 p.22
**cost** /kɒst/, /kɔːst/ *v.* (cost, cost) 花费 *n.* 花费；价钱 p.98
costume /ˈkɒstjuːm/, /ˈkɑːstuːm/ *n.*（特定场合穿的）服装；装束 p.93
costume party 化装舞会 p.93
**cotton** /ˈkɒtn/, /ˈkɑːtn/ *n.* 棉；棉花 p.33
**courage** /ˈkʌrɪdʒ/, /ˈkɜːrɪdʒ/ *n.* 勇敢；勇气 p.86
**course** /kɔː(r)s/ *n.* 课程；学科 p.23
**cream** /kriːm/ *n.* 奶油；乳脂 p.92
**create** /kriˈeɪt/ *v.* 创造；创建 p.6
creativity /ˌkriːeɪˈtɪvəti/ *n.* 创造力；独创性 p.102
crispy /ˈkrɪspi/ *adj.* 脆的；酥脆的 p.45
crowd /kraʊd/ *n.* 人群；观众 p.27
**cruel** /ˈkruːəl/ *adj.* 残酷的；残忍的 p.99
**cry** /kraɪ/ *v.* & *n.* 哭；叫喊 p.51
custom /ˈkʌstəm/ *n.* 风俗；习俗 p.73
**customer** /ˈkʌstəmə(r)/ *n.* 顾客；客户 p.45


## D


**daily** /ˈdeɪli/ *adj.* 每日的；日常的 p.42
**dare** /deə/, /der/ *v.* 敢于；胆敢 p.27
**dead** /ded/ *adj.* 死的；失去生命的 p.14
**deal** /diːl/ *v.*（dealt /delt/, dealt）对付；对待 p.27
deal with 应对；处理 p.27
**degree** /dɪˈgriː/ *n.*（大学）学位；度数；程度 p.109
**dessert** /dɪˈzɜː(r)t/ *n.*（饭后）甜点；甜食 p.11




微信公众号：电子课本大全

**dialog** /'daɪəlɒg/, /'daɪəlɑ:g/ *n.* (=dialogue) 对话；对白 p.67
**direct** /də'rekt, daɪ'rekt/ *adj.* 直接的；直率的 p.22
**direction** /də'rekʃn, daɪ'rekʃn/ *n.* 方向；方位 p.22
**director** /də'rektə(r), daɪ'rektə(r)/ *n.* 导演；部门负责人 p.66
**disappear** /ˌdɪsə'pɪə/ *v.* 消失；不见 p.95
**disappoint** /ˌdɪsə'pɔɪnt/ *v.* 使失望 p.87
disbelief /ˌdɪsbɪ'li:f/ *n.* 不信；怀疑 p.91
**discover** /dɪ'skʌvə(r)/ *v.* 发现；发觉 p.3
**discovery** /dɪ'skʌvəri/ *n.* 发现；发觉 p.94
**divide** /dɪ'vaɪd/ *v.* 分开；分散 p.46
divide ... into 把……分开 p.46
documentary /ˌdɒkju'mentri/, /ˌdɑ:kju'mentri/ *n.* 纪录片 p.67
**double** /'dʌbl/ *v.* 加倍；是……的两倍 *adj.* 两倍的；加倍的 p.106
**doubt** /daʊt/ *n.* 疑惑；疑问 *v.* 怀疑 p.43
**down** /daʊn/ *adj.* 悲哀；沮丧 p.67
drama /'drɑ:mə/ *n.* 戏；剧 p.67
**drive** /draɪv/ *v.* 迫使 p.82
drive sb. crazy/mad 使人发疯/发狂 p.82
drop by 顺便访问；随便进入 p.75

## E

earring /'ɪərɪŋ/, /'ɪrɪŋ/ *n.* 耳环；耳饰 p.50
**earthquake** /'ɜ:(r)θkweɪk/ *n.* 地震 p.44
**east** /i:st/ *adv.* 向东；朝东 *adj.* 东方的；东部的 *n.* 东；东方 p.20
**eastern** /'i:stə(r)n/ *adj.* 东方的；东部的 p.76
ecosystem /'i:kəʊˌsɪstəm/ *n.* 生态系统 p.99
**educate** /'edʒukeɪt/ *v.* 教育；教导 p.52
effort /'efə(r)t/ *n.* 努力；尽力 p.75
elbow /'elbəʊ/ *n.* 肘；胳膊 p.78
electricity /ɪˌlek'trɪsəti/ *n.* 电；电能 p.42
**electronic** /ɪˌlek'trɒnɪk/, /ɪˌlek'trɑ:nɪk/ *adj.* 电子的；电子设备的 p.66
embarrassed /ɪm'bærəst/ *adj.* 窘迫的；害羞的 p.93
embarrassing /ɪm'bærəsɪŋ/ *adj.* 使人害羞的（难堪的或惭愧的） p.95
**empty** /'empti/ *adj.* 空的；空洞的 p.77
ending /'endɪŋ/ *n.*（故事、电影等的）结尾；结局 p.67
end up 最终成为；最后处于 p.14
**enemy** /'enəmi/ *n.* 敌人；仇人 p.62
**energy** /'enə(r)dʒi/ *n.* 力量；精力 p.62
**enter** /'entə(r)/ *v.* 进来；进去 p.54
environmental /ɪnˌvaɪrən'mentl/ *adj.* 自然环境的；有关环境的 p.34
**European** /ˌjʊə(r)ə'pi:ən/ *adj.* 欧洲（人）的 *n.* 欧洲人 p.28
eve /i:v/ *n.* 前夕；前夜 p.14
**everyday** /'evrideɪ/ *adj.* 每天的；日常的 p.35
**exactly** /ɪg'zæktli/ *adv.* 确切地；精确地 p.30
**examination** /ɪgˌzæmɪ'neɪʃn/ *n.* 考试；审查 p.30
**examine** /ɪg'zæmɪn/ *v.*（仔细地）检查；检验 p.83
**except** /ɪk'sept/ *prep.* 除……之外 *conj.* 除了；只是 p.78



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**exchange** /ɪks'tʃeɪndʒ/ *n.* & *v.* 交换 p.78
**express** /ɪk'spres/ *v.* 表示；表达 p.62
**expression** /ɪk'spreʃn/
*n.* 表情；表示；表达方式 p.3

## F

**fail** /feɪl/ *v.* 不及格；失败；
未能（做到） p.30
**fair** /feə(r)/, /fer/ *n.* 展览会；
交易会 p.34
fairy /'feəri/, /'feri/ tale /teɪl/
童话故事 p.38
fame /feɪm/ *n.* 名声；声誉 p.83
fascinating /'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ/
*adj.* 迷人的；极有吸引力的 p.21
fault /fɔ:lt/ *n.* 过失；缺点 p.86
**field** /fi:ld/ *n.* 田野；场地 p.51
fin /fɪn/ *n.*（鱼）鳍 p.99
first of all 首先 p.110
**fisherman** /'fɪʃə(r)mən/ *n.* 渔民；
钓鱼的人 p.97
flash /flæʃ/ *n.* 闪光灯；闪光
*v.* 闪耀；闪光 p.50
folk /fəʊk/ *adj.* 民间的；民俗的 p.11
**fool** /fu:l/ *n.* 蠢人；傻瓜 *v.* 愚弄 p.93
**fork** /fɔ:(r)k/ *n.* 餐叉；叉子 p.33
**form** /fɔ:(r)m/ *n.* 形式；类型 p.38
**France** /frɑ:ns/, /fræns/ 法国 p.35
**fridge** /frɪdʒ/ *n.* 冰箱 p.44
**friendship** /'frendʃɪp/ *n.* 友谊；友情 p.82
from time to time 时常；有时 p.26

## G

**garden** /'gɑ:(r)dn/ *n.* 花园；园子 p.11
**gate** /geɪt/ *n.* 大门 p.102
**general** /'dʒenrəl/ *adj.* 总的；普遍的；
常规的 *n.* 将军 p.32
**gentleman** /'dʒentlmən/ *n.* 先生；
绅士 p.110
**Germany** /'dʒɜ:(r)məni/ 德国 p.36
get in the way of 挡……的路；妨碍 p.54
get mad 大动肝火；气愤 p.75
get used to 习惯于 p.78
ghost /gəʊst/ *n.* 鬼；鬼魂 p.13
give ... a lift 捎……一程 p.90
**glass** /glɑ:s/, /glæs/ *n.* 玻璃 p.33
**glove** /glʌv/ *n.*（分手指的）手套 p.36
go by（时间）逝去；过去 p.108
go out of one's way 特地；格外努力 p.78
**goal** /gəʊl/ *n.* 球门；射门；目标 p.86
goddess /'gɒdes/, /'gɑ:dəs/ *n.* 女神 p.11
gradually /'grædʒuəli/
*adv.* 逐步地；渐进地 p.78
graduate /'grædʒueɪt/ *v.* 毕业；
获得学位 p.107
graduation /ˌgrædʒu'eɪʃn/ *n.* 毕业 p.110
**grammar** /'græmə(r)/ *n.* 语法 p.3
**granddaughter** /'grændɔ:tə(r)/
*n.*（外）孙女 p.78
**grape** /greɪp/ *n.* 葡萄 p.20
**grass** /grɑ:s/, /græs/ *n.* 草；草地 p.34
**greet** /gri:t/ *v.* 和……打招呼；迎接 p.74
**grey** /greɪ/ *adj.*（天空）阴沉的；
昏暗的；灰色的 p.84
**guard** /gɑ:(r)d/ *n.* 警卫；看守
*v.* 守卫；保卫 p.27
guy /gaɪ/ *n.*（非正式）家伙
(*pl.*) 伙计们 p.86



微信公众号：电子课本大全

## H


**handbag** /'hændbæg/ *n.* 小手提包 p.35
happening /'hæpənɪŋ/ *n.* 事件；发生的事情（常指不寻常的） p.59
**harmful** /'hɑ:(r)mfl/ *adj.* 有害的 p.99
haunted /'hɔ:ntɪd/ *adj.* 有鬼魂出没的；闹鬼的 p.13
have a point 有道理 p.42
**heat** /hi:t/ *n.* 热；高温 *v.* 加热；变热 p.38
heel /hi:l/ *n.* 鞋跟；足跟 p.42
**helpful** /'helpfl/ *adj.* 有用的；有帮助的 p.26
**hero** /'hɪərəʊ/, /'hɪrəʊ/ *n.* 英雄；男主角 p.46
historian /hɪ'stɔ:riən/ *n.* 历史学家；史学工作者 p.62
historical /hɪ'stɒrɪkl/, /hɪ'stɔ:rɪkl/ *adj.*（有关）历史的 p.38
hoax /həʊks/ *n.* 骗局；恶作剧 p.94
honor /'ɒnə/, /'ɑ:nər/ (= honour) *v.* 尊重；表示敬意 *n.* 荣幸；荣誉 p.62
**hug** /hʌg/ *n.* & *v.* 拥抱；搂抱 p.51
**humorous** /'hju:mərəs/ *adj.* 有幽默感的；滑稽有趣的 p.26


## I


**impolite** /ˌɪmpə'laɪt/ *adj.* 不礼貌的；粗鲁的 p.22
in a row 连续几次地 p.105
in line with 与……成一排 p.91
in person 亲身；亲自 p.30
in public 公开地；在别人（尤指生人）面前 p.28
in that case 既然那样；假使那样的话 p.66
in total 总共；合计 p.70
**increase** /ɪn'kri:s/ *v.* 增加；增长 p.5
**industry** /'ɪndəstri/ *n.* 工业；行业 p.99
inexpensive /ˌɪnɪk'spensɪv/ *adj.* 不昂贵的 p.21
**influence** /'ɪnfluəns/ *v.* & *n.* 影响 p.30
insect /'ɪnsekt/ *n.* 昆虫 p.29
inspiration /ˌɪnspə'reɪʃn/ *n.* 灵感；鼓舞人心的人（或事物） p.102
**instruction** /ɪn'strʌkʃn/ *n.* 指示；命令 p.106
**instrument** /'ɪnstrəmənt/ *n.* 器械；仪器；工具 p.44
intelligent /ɪn'telɪdʒənt/ *adj.* 有才智的；聪明的 p.68
**international** /ˌɪntə(r)'næʃnəl/ *adj.* 国际的 p.37
**interview** /'ɪntə(r)vju:/ *v.* 采访；面试 *n.* 面试；访谈 p.27
**introduction** /ˌɪntrə'dʌkʃn/ *n.* 介绍 p.32
iron /'aɪən/ *n.* 铁 p.102
**its** /ɪts/ *adj.* 它的 p.38


## K


keep ... away from 避免接近；远离 p.52
keep one's cool 沉住气；保持冷静 p.107
**keyboard** /'ki:bɔ:(r)d/ *n.* 键盘式电子乐器；键盘 p.105
**kick** /kɪk/ *v.* 踢；踹 p.86
kick sb. off 开除某人 p.86
**king** /kɪŋ/ *n.* 国王；君主 p.83
**kiss** /kɪs/ *v.* & *n.* 亲吻；接吻 p.73
**knock** /nɒk/, /nɑ:k/ *v.* 敲；击 *n.* 敲击声；敲击 p.76




微信公众号：电子课本大全

**knowledge** /'nɒlɪdʒ/, /'nɑ:lɪdʒ/ *n.* 知识；学问 p.6

## L

**laboratory** /lə'bɒrətri/, /'læbrətɔ:ri/ *n.* 实验室 p.60
**lady** /'leɪdi/ *n.* 女士；女子 p.94
**land** /lænd/ *v.* 着陆；降落 p.61
lantern /'læntə(r)n/ *n.* 灯笼 p.9
lastly /'lɑ:stli/, /'læstli/ *adv.* 最后 p.110
lately /'leɪtli/ *adv.* 最近；不久前 p.82
**law** /lɔ:/ *n.* 法律；法规 p.99
**lay** /leɪ/ *v.* (laid /leɪd/, laid) 放置；安放；产（卵）；下（蛋） p.11
lay out 摆开；布置 p.11
**leader** /'li:də(r)/ *n.* 领导；领袖 p.62
**leaf** /li:f/ *n.*（*pl.* leaves /li:vz/）叶；叶子 p.34
leave out 不包括；不提及；忽略 p.82
**lemon** /'lemən/ *n.* 柠檬 p.84
let ... down 使失望 p.86
**level** /'levl/ *n.* 水平 p.108
**license** /'laɪsns/ *n.* (= licence) 证；证件 p.49
**lie** /laɪ/ *v.* (lay /leɪ/, lain /leɪn/) 存在；平躺；处于 p.14
lifelong /'laɪflɒŋ/ *adj.* 终身的；毕生的 p.6
lifetime /'laɪftaɪm/ *n.* 一生；有生之年 p.70
**lift** /lɪft/ *v.* 举起；抬高 *n.* 电梯；搭便车 p.51
**list** /lɪst/ *v.* 列表；列清单 *n.* 名单；清单 p.42
**litter** /'lɪtə(r)/ *v.* 乱扔 *n.* 垃圾；废弃物 p.97
**lively** /'laɪvli/ *adj.* 生气勃勃的；（色彩）鲜艳的 p.38
**local** /'ləʊkl/ *adj.* 当地的；本地的 p.35
**lock** /lɒk/, /lɑ:k/ *v.* 锁上；锁住 *n.* 锁 p.44
look back at 回首（往事）；回忆；回顾 p.107
look up（在词典、参考书中或通过电脑）查阅；抬头看 p.3
look up to 钦佩；仰慕 p.46
**low** /ləʊ/ *adj.* 低的；矮的 p.44
lyrics /'lɪrɪks/ *n.* (*pl.*) 歌词 p.65

## M

**mad** /mæd/ *adj.* 很生气；疯的 p.75
**mail** /meɪl/ *v.* 邮寄；发电子邮件 *n.* 邮件；信件 p.20
make ... feel at home 使（某人）感到宾至如归 p.78
make a mess 弄得一团糟（一塌糊涂） p.107
make an effort 作出努力 p.75
make one's own decision 自己做决定 p.52
mall /mɔ:l/ *n.* 商场；购物中心 p.21
**manage** /'mænɪdʒ/ *v.* 完成（困难的事）；应付（困难局面） p.52
**manager** /'mænɪdʒə(r)/ *n.* 经理；经营者 p.109
**manner** /'mænə(r)/ *n.* 方式；方法 (*pl.*) 礼貌；礼仪 p.76
**market** /'mɑ:(r)kɪt/ *n.* 市场；集市 p.92
**master** /'mɑ:stə/, /'mæstər/ *n.* 大师；能手；主人 *v.* 掌握 p.70
**material** /mə'tɪəriəl/ *n.* 材料；原料 p.36



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**medical** /'medɪkl/ *adj.* 医疗的；医学的 p.62
memorize /'meməraɪz/ *v.* 记忆；记住 p.4
**mention** /'menʃn/ *v.* 提到；说到 p.42
**metal** /'metl/ *n.* 金属 p.102
**method** /'meθəd/ *n.* 方法；措施 p.106
midsummer /ˌmɪd'sʌmə(r)/ *n.* 仲夏；中夏 p.62
minister /'mɪnɪstə(r)/ *n.* 大臣；部长 p.83
**mobile** /'məʊbaɪl/, /'məʊbl/ *adj.* 可移动的；非固定的 p.35
mooncake /'mu:nkeɪk/ *n.* 月饼 p.9
moving /'mu:vɪŋ/ *adj.* 动人的；令人感动的 p.70
**musical** /'mju:zɪkl/ *adj.* 音乐的；有音乐天赋的 p.44
mystery /'mɪstri/ *n.* 奥秘；神秘事物 p.62

## N

napkin /'næpkɪn/ *n.* 餐巾；餐巾纸 p.101
**national** /'næʃnəl/ *adj.* 国家的；民族的 p.43
nearby /ˌnɪə'baɪ/ *adj.* 附近的；邻近的 *adv.* 在附近；附近 p.20
**nearly** /'nɪəli/, /'nɪrli/ *adv.* 几乎 p.48
neither ... nor ... 既不……也不…… p.83
no matter 不论；无论 p.35
**nod** /nɒd/, /nɑ:d/ *v.* 点头 p.86
**noise** /nɔɪz/ *n.* 声音；噪音 p.59
**noon** /nu:n/ *n.* 正午；中午 p.75
**nor** /nɔ:(r)/ *conj.* & *adv.* 也不 p.83
normally /'nɔ:(r)məli/ *adv.* 通常；正常情况下 p.18
**northern** /'nɔ:(r)ðə(r)n/ *adj.* 北方的；北部的 p.76
not only ... but also ... 不但……而且…… p.46
**note** /nəʊt/ *n.* 笔记；记录 *v.* 注意；指出 p.4
**novel** /'nɒvl/, /'nɑ:vl/ *n.*（长篇）小说 p.14

## O

**officer** /'ɒfɪsə/, /'ɑ:fɪsər/ *n.* 军官；官员 p.94
once in a while 偶尔地；间或 p.67
**ours** /'aʊə(r)z/ *pron.* 我们的 p.107
outdoors /ˌaʊt'dɔ:(r)z/ *adv.* 在户外；在野外 p.60
**overcome** /ˌəʊvə(r)'kʌm/ *v.* (overcame /ˌəʊvə(r)'keɪm/, overcome) 克服；战胜 p.107
overnight /ˌəʊvə(r)'naɪt/ *adv.* 一夜之间；在夜间 p.6
**oversleep** /ˌəʊvə(r)'sli:p/ *v.* (overslept /ˌəʊvə(r)'slept/, overslept) 睡过头；睡得太久 p.89

## P

pack /pæk/ *v.* 包装；装箱 p.34
**pain** /peɪn/ *n.* 痛苦；疼痛；苦恼 p.70
**painful** /'peɪnfl/ *adj.* 令人痛苦的；令人疼痛的 p.70
pal /pæl/ *n.* 朋友；伙伴 p.4
**palace** /'pæləs/ *n.* 王宫；宫殿 p.83
**pale** /peɪl/ *adj.* 苍白的；灰白的 p.83
paper cutting 剪纸 p.38
**pardon** /'pɑ:(r)dn/ *v.* 原谅 *interj.* 请再说一遍 p.18



微信公众号：电子课本大全

pardon me 抱歉，对不起；什么，请再说一遍 p.20
parking lot 停车场；停车区 p.22
**partner** /'pɑ:(r)tnə(r)/ *n.* 搭档；同伴 p.5
part-time /ˌpɑ:(r)t'taɪm/ *adj.* & *adv.* 兼职（的） p.49
pass by 路过；经过 p.19
**passport** /'pɑ:spɔ:t/, /'pæspɔ:rt/ *n.* 护照 p.76
**patient** /'peɪʃnt/ *adj.* 有耐心的 *n.* 病人 p.2
pattern /'pætn/, /'pætərn/ *n.* 模式；方式 p.4
pay attention to 注意；关注 p.6
pay for 付费；付出代价 p.100
**perform** /pə(r)'fɔ:(r)m/ *v.* 表演；执行 p.70
**period** /'pɪəriəd/, /'pɪriəd/ *n.* 一段时间；时期 p.62
**physics** /'fɪzɪks/ *n.* 物理；物理学 p.4
**picnic** /'pɪknɪk/ *n.* 野餐 p.57
pierce /pɪəs/, /pɪrs/ *v.* 扎；刺破；穿透 p.49
**pink** /pɪŋk/ *adj.* 粉红色的 *n.* 粉红色 p.58
**pioneer** /ˌpaɪə'nɪə/, /ˌpaɪə'nɪr/ *n.* 先锋；先驱 p.42
**pity** /'pɪti/ *n.* 遗憾；怜悯 *v.* 同情；怜悯 p.70
**plastic** /'plæstɪk/ *adj.* 塑料的 *n.* 塑料；塑胶 p.98
**pleasure** /'pleʒə(r)/ *n.* 高兴；愉快 p.42
**plenty** /'plenti/ *pron.* 大量；众多 p.67
plenty of 大量；充足 p.67
**poem** /'pəʊɪm/ *n.* 诗；韵文 p.51
**policeman** /pə'li:smən/ *n.*（*pl.* policemen）男警察 p.59
polish /'pɒlɪʃ/, /'pɑ:lɪʃ/ *v.* 磨光；修改；润色 p.38
**polite** /pə'laɪt/ *adj.* 有礼貌的；客气的 p.22
**politely** /pə'laɪtli/ *adv.* 礼貌地；客气地 p.22
popularity /ˌpɒpju'lærəti/, /ˌpɑ:pju'lærəti/ *n.* 受欢迎；普及 p.43
**position** /pə'zɪʃn/ *n.* 位置；地方 p.62
**postcard** /'pəʊstkɑ:(r)d/ *n.* 明信片 p.18
**postman** /'pəʊstmən/ *n.* 邮递员 p.36
**pound** /paʊnd/ *n.* 磅（重量单位）；英镑（英国货币单位） p.10
**power** /'paʊə(r)/ *n.* 权力；力量 p.83
**praise** /preɪz/ *v.* & *n.* 表扬；赞扬 p.70
**prefer** /prɪ'fɜ:(r)/ *v.* 更喜欢 p.65
**present** /'preznt/ *n.* 现在；礼物 *adj.* 现在的 p.14
**president** /'prezɪdənt/ *n.* 负责人；主席；总统 p.102
**prevent** /prɪ'vent/ *v.* 阻止；阻挠 p.62
**pride** /praɪd/ *n.* 自豪；骄傲 p.30
prime /praɪm/ *adj.* 首要的；基本的 p.83
prime minister 首相；大臣 p.83
**private** /'praɪvət/ *adj.* 私人的；私密的 p.27
**process** /'prəʊses/ *v.* 加工；处理 *n.* 过程 p.34
**produce** /prə'dju:s/, /prə'du:s/ *v.* 生产；制造；出产 p.34




微信公众号：电子课本大全

**product** /'prɒdʌkt/, /'prɑːdʌkt/ *n.* 产品；制品 p.35
professional /prə'feʃənl/ *adj.* 职业的；专业的 p.47
**project** /'prɒdʒekt/, /'prɑːdʒekt/ *n.* 项目；工程 p.42
**pronounce** /prə'naʊns/ *v.* 发音 p.5
**pronunciation** /prəˌnʌnsi'eɪʃn/ *n.* 发音；读音 p.2
**proud** /praʊd/ *adj.* 自豪的；骄傲的 p.30
**public** /'pʌblɪk/ *n.* 民众 *adj.* 公开的；公众的 p.28
**pull** /pʊl/ *v.* 拉；拖 p.86
pull ... down 拆下；摧毁 p.102
pull together 齐心协力；通力合作 p.86
**punish** /'pʌnɪʃ/ *v.* 处罚；惩罚 p.14
**purpose** /'pɜː(r)pəs/ *n.* 目的；目标 p.62
put on 增加（体重）；发胖 p.10
put sth. to good use 好好利用某物 p.102

## Q

**queen** /kwiːn/ *n.* 王后；女王 p.83

## R

**rabbit** /'ræbɪt/ *n.* 兔；野兔 p.57
rather /'rɑːðə/, /'ræðər/ *adv.* 宁愿；相当 p.81
rather than 而不是 p.86
recall /rɪ'kɔːl/ *v.* 回忆起；回想起 p.70
**receive** /rɪ'siːv/ *v.* 接待；接受；收到 p.62
**recycle** /ˌriː'saɪkl/ *v.* 回收利用；再利用 p.101
**reflect** /rɪ'flekt/ *v.* 反映；映出 p.70
**regret** /rɪ'gret/ *v.* & *n.* 感到遗憾；懊悔 p.51
**relative** /'relətɪv/ *n.* 亲属；亲戚 p.10
**relaxed** /rɪ'lækst/ *adj.* 放松的；自在的 p.75
relief /rɪ'liːf/ *n.* 轻松；解脱 p.86
**remain** /rɪ'meɪn/ *v.* 保持不变；剩余 p.43
**repeat** /rɪ'piːt/ *v.* 重复；重做 p.4
**request** /rɪ'kwest/ *n.* & *v.* 要求；请求 p.22
**require** /rɪ'kwaɪə(r)/ *v.* 需要；要求 p.27
responsible /rɪ'spɒnsəbl/, /rɪ'spɑːnsəbl/ *adj.* 有责任心的 p.110
**restroom** /'restruːm/ *n.*（美）洗手间；公共厕所 p.17
reusable /ˌriː'juːzəbl/ *adj.* 可重复使用的；可再次使用的 p.100
**review** /rɪ'vjuː/ *v.* & *n.* 回顾；复习 p.6
**ring** /rɪŋ/ *v.*（rang /ræŋ/, rung /rʌŋ/）（使）发出钟声或铃声；打电话 p.44
**row** /rəʊ/ *n.* 一排；一列；一行 p.105
**ruler** /'ruːlə/ *n.* 统治者；支配者 p.43
run after 追逐；追赶 p.61
**rush** /rʌʃ/ *v.* & *n.* 仓促；急促 p.18

## S

**sadness** /'sædnəs/ *n.* 悲伤；悲痛 p.70
**safety** /'seɪfti/ *n.* 安全；安全性 p.49
saint /seɪnt/ *n.* 圣人；圣徒 p.43
salty /'sɔːlti/ *adj.* 咸的 p.45
**scientific** /ˌsaɪən'tɪfɪk/ *adj.* 科学上的；科学的 p.99
**scissors** /'sɪzə(r)z/ *n.* (*pl.*) 剪刀 p.38
scoop /skuːp/ *n.* 勺；铲子 p.42
**score** /skɔː(r)/ *n.* & *v.* 得分；进球 p.26
**season** /'siːzn/ *n.* 季；季节 p.76



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**secret** /'si:krət/ *n.* 秘密；秘诀
*adj.* 秘密的；保密的 p.3
**seldom** /'seldəm/ *adv.* 不常；很少 p.30
sell out 卖光 p.94
**senior** /'si:niə(r)/
*adj.* 级别（或地位）高的 p.108
senior high (school) 高中 p.108
**sense** /sens/ *v.* 感觉到；意识到
*n.* 感觉；意识 p.70
**sentence** /'sentəns/ *n.* 句子 p.2
**separate** /'sepərət/ *adj.* 单独的；分离的
/'sepəreɪt/ *v.* 分开；分离 p.110
separate from 分离；隔开 p.111
set out 出发；启程 p.110
**shall** /ʃæl, ʃəl/ *modal v.* 将要；将会 p.106
shark /ʃɑ:(r)k/ *n.* 鲨鱼 p.99
**shoulder** /'ʃəʊldə(r)/ *n.* 肩；肩膀 p.86
show up 赶到；露面 p.92
**shut** /ʃʌt/ *v.* (shut, shut) 关闭；关上 p.67
shut off 关闭；停止运转 p.67
shyness /'ʃaɪnəs/ *n.* 害羞；腼腆 p.27
**silent** /'saɪlənt/ *adj.* 不说话的；
沉默的 p.26
**silver** /'sɪlvə(r)/ *n.* 银；银器
*adj.* 银色的 p.33
**sleepy** /'sli:pi/ *adj.* 困倦的；瞌睡的 p.60
**smell** /smel/ *n.* 气味
*v.*（smelt /smelt/, smelt; smelled, smelled）发出……气味；闻到 p.43
**smoke** /sməʊk/ *v.* 吸烟；冒烟
*n.* 烟 p.49
**smooth** /smu:ð/ *adj.* 悦耳的；平滑的 p.66
**society** /sə'saɪəti/ *n.* 社会 p.52
**somebody** /'sʌmbədi/
*pron.* 某人 *n.* 重要人物 p.44
**sour** /'saʊə(r)/ *adj.* 酸的；有酸味的 p.45
spaghetti /spə'geti/ *n.* 意大利面条 p.94
**spare** /speə(r)/, /sper/ *adj.* 空闲的；
不用的 *v.* 抽出；留出 p.66
**speaker** /'spi:kə(r)/
*n.* 讲（某种语言）的人；发言者 p.22
**speech** /spi:tʃ/ *n.* 讲话；发言 p.28
**speed** /spi:d/ *n.* 速度 p.5
spider /'spaɪdə(r)/ *n.* 蜘蛛 p.13
**spread** /spred/ *v.*（spread, spread）
传播；展开 *n.* 蔓延；传播 p.14
staff /stɑ:f/, /stæf/ *n.* 管理人员；
职工 p.19
**stamp** /stæmp/ *n.* 邮票；印章 p.17
**standard** /'stændə(r)d/
*n.* 标准；水平 p.105
stare /steə/, /ster/ *v.* 盯着看；凝视 p.91
**steal** /sti:l/ *v.* (stole /stəʊl/,
stolen /'stəʊlən/) 偷；窃取 p.11
**steel** /sti:l/ *n.* 钢；钢铁 p.33
**stick** /stɪk/ *v.* (stuck /stʌk/, stuck) 粘贴；
将……刺入 p.67
stick to 坚持；固守 p.67
**stranger** /'streɪndʒə(r)/ *n.* 陌生人 p.10
**style** /staɪl/ *n.* 样式；款式 p.42
**sudden** /'sʌdən/ *adj.* 突然（的） p.44
**suggest** /sə'dʒest/ *v.* 建议；提议 p.19
**suggestion** /sə'dʒestʃən/ *n.* 建议 p.80
**suit** /sju:t/, /su:t/ *n.* 西服；套装
*v.* 适合 p.61
superhero /'su:pə(r)ˌhɪərəʊ/
*n.* 超级英雄 p.67
**support** /sə'pɔ:(r)t/ *v.* & *n.* 支持 p.54
**suppose** /sə'pəʊz/ *v.* 推断；料想 p.66



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**surface** /'sɜ:(r)fɪs/ *n.* 表面；表层 p.36
**survey** /'sɜ:(r)veɪ/ *n.* 调查 p.105

## T

take action 采取行动 p.100
take off 脱下（衣服）；
（飞机等）起飞 p.76
take part in 参加 p.100
take place 发生；出现 p.43
take pride in 为……感到自豪 p.30
takeaway /'teɪkəweɪ/ *n.* 外卖食物 p.98
talk back 回嘴；顶嘴 p.51
**task** /tɑ:sk/, /tæsk/ *n.* 任务；工作 p.110
teammate /'ti:mmeɪt/ *n.* 同队队员；
队友 p.86
teen /ti:n/ *n.*（13至19岁之间的）
青少年 p.51
teenage /'ti:neɪdʒ/ *adj.* 十几岁的；
青少年的 p.78
temple /'templ/ *n.* 庙宇；寺院；圣殿 p.62
**text** /tekst/ *n.* 课文；文本 p.108
**textbook** /'tekstbʊk/ *n.* 教科书；课本 p.1
**thankful** /'θæŋkfəl/ *adj.* 感谢；
感激 p.110
the food chain 食物链 p.99
the more ... the more ... 越……越……；
愈……愈…… p.82
**the Olympics** /ə'lɪmpɪks/
奥林匹克运动会 p.46
**thirsty** /'θɜ:(r)sti/ *adj.* 渴望的；
口渴的 p.110
throw away 扔掉；抛弃 p.102
**tie** /taɪ/ *n.* 领带 *v.* 捆；束 p.12
**till** /tɪl/ *prep.* & *conj.* 到；直到 p.91
**tiny** /'taɪni/ *adj.* 极小的；微小的 p.51
to start with 起初；开始时 p.84
**ton** /tʌn/ *n.* 吨；(*pl.*) 大量；许多 p.27
**total** /'təʊtl/ *n.* 总数；合计
*adj.* 总的；全体的 p.70
**trade** /treɪd/ *n.* 贸易；交易
*v.* 做买卖；从事贸易 p.43
tradition /trə'dɪʃn/ *n.* 传统 p.11
**traffic** /'træfɪk/ *n.* 交通；
路上行驶的车辆 p.36
**translate** /træns'leɪt/ *v.* 翻译 p.44
transportation /ˌtrænspɔ:(r)'teɪʃn/
*n.* 运输业；交通运输 p.100
**treat** /tri:t/ *n.* 款待；招待
*v.* 招待；请（客） p.13
trick /trɪk/ *n.* 花招；把戏 p.13
**truck** /trʌk/ *n.* 卡车；货车 p.57
turn off 关掉 p.100

## U

**ugly** /'ʌgli/ *adj.* 丑陋的；难看的 p.98
**underground** /'ʌndə(r)graʊnd/
*adj.* 地下的 *n.* 地铁 p.22
**uncomfortable** /ʌn'kʌmfə(r)təbl/
*adj.* 使人不舒服的；令人不舒适的 p.84
uncrowded /ʌn'kraʊdɪd/
*adj.* 不拥挤的；人少的 p.21
uneasy /ʌn'i:zi/ *adj.* 担心的；不安的 p.59
**unexpected** /ˌʌnɪk'spektɪd/
*adj.* 出乎意料的；始料不及的 p.89
upside /'ʌpsaɪd/ down 上下颠倒；
倒转 p.102

## V

**valuable** /'væljuəbl/ *adj.* 贵重的；
很有用的；宝贵的 p.58



微信公众号：电子课本大全

**value** /'vælju:/ *v.* 重视；珍视
*n.* 价值 p.75
**victory** /'vɪktəri/ *n.* 胜利；成功 p.62

## W

**war** /wɔ:(r)/ *n.* 战争；战争状态 p.66
**warmth** /wɔ:(r)mθ/ *n.* 温暖；暖和 p.14
**warn** /wɔ:(r)n/ *v.* 警告；告诫 p.14
washroom /'wɒʃru:m/, /'wɑ:ʃru:m/
*n.* 洗手间；厕所 p.18
**wealth** /welθ/ *n.* 财富 p.83
**website** /'websaɪt/ *n.* 网站 p.42
**weight** /weɪt/ *n.* 重量；分量 p.86
**west** /west/ *adv.* 向西；朝西
*adj.* 向西的；西部的
*n.* 西；西方 p.91
whoever /hu:'evə(r)/ *pron.* 无论谁；
不管什么人 p.11
**whom** /hu:m/ *pron.* 谁；什么人 p.22
**whose** /hu:z/ *adj.* & *pron.* 谁的 p.57
**widely** /'waɪdli/ *adv.* 广泛地；
普遍地 p.34
**wing** /wɪŋ/ *n.* 翅膀；翼 p.111
**wisely** /'waɪzli/ *adv.* 明智地；聪明地 p.6
without doubt 毫无疑问；的确 p.43
**wolf** /wʊlf/ *n.* 狼 p.59
**wooden** /'wʊdn/ *adj.* 木制的；木头的 p.98
**work** /wɜ:(r)k/
*n.*（音乐、艺术）作品 p.102
workday/'wɜ:(r)kdeɪ/ *n.* 工作日 p.92
**worker** /'wɜ:(r)kə(r)/ *n.* 工作者；
工人 p.91
**worth** /wɜ:(r)θ/ *adj.* 值得；
有……价值（的） p.76
would rather（通常缩写为'd rather）
宁愿 p.81
**wound** /wu:nd/ *n.* 伤；伤口；创伤
*v.* 使（身体）受伤；伤害 p.70

## Z

zipper /'zɪpə(r)/ *n.* (= zip) 拉链；
拉锁 p.42



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# Irregular Verbs

| Verb | Past tense | Past participle |
|---|---|---|
| be (am, is, are) | was, were | been |
| bear | bore | born |
| beat | beat | beaten |
| become | became | become |
| begin | began | begun |
| blow | blew | blown |
| break | broke | broken |
| bring | brought | brought |
| build | built | built |
| burn | burnt/ burned | burnt/burned |
| buy | bought | bought |
| catch | caught | caught |
| choose | chose | chosen |
| come | came | come |
| cost | cost | cost |
| cut | cut | cut |
| deal | dealt | dealt |
| dig | dug | dug |
| do (does) | did | done |
| draw | drew | drawn |
| dream | dreamt/ dreamed | dreamt/dreamed |
| drink | drank | drunk |
| drive | drove | driven |
| eat | ate | eaten |

| Verb | Past tense | Past participle |
|---|---|---|
| fall | fell | fallen |
| feed | fed | fed |
| feel | felt | felt |
| fight | fought | fought |
| find | found | found |
| fly | flew | flown |
| forget | forgot | forgotten |
| get | got | got/gotten |
| give | gave | given |
| go | went | gone |
| grow | grew | grown |
| hang (悬挂) | hung | hung |
| have (has) | had | had |
| hear | heard | heard |
| hide | hid | hidden |
| hit | hit | hit |
| hold | held | held |
| hurt | hurt | hurt |
| keep | kept | kept |
| know | knew | known |
| lay | laid | laid |
| lead | led | led |
| learn | learnt/ learned | learnt/learned |
| leave | left | left |
| lend | lent | lent |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

| Verb | Past tense | Past participle |
|---|---|---|
| let | let | let |
| lie (躺) | lay | lain |
| light | lit/lighted | lit/lighted |
| lose | lost | lost |
| make | made | made |
| mean | meant | meant |
| meet | met | met |
| mistake | mistook | mistaken |
| overcome | overcame | overcome |
| oversleep | overslept | overslept |
| pay | paid | paid |
| put | put | put |
| read /riːd/ | read /red/ | read /red/ |
| ride | rode | ridden |
| ring | rang | rung |
| rise | rose | risen |
| run | ran | run |
| say | said | said |
| see | saw | seen |
| sell | sold | sold |
| send | sent | sent |
| set | set | set |
| shake | shook | shaken |
| shine | shone | shone |
| show | showed | shown |
| shut | shut | shut |

| Verb | Past tense | Past participle |
|---|---|---|
| sing | sang | sung |
| sit | sat | sat |
| sleep | slept | slept |
| smell | smelt/ smelled | smelt/smelled |
| speak | spoke | spoken |
| speed | sped/ speeded | sped/speeded |
| spell | spelt/ spelled | spelt/spelled |
| spend | spent | spent |
| spread | spread | spread |
| stand | stood | stood |
| steal | stole | stolen |
| stick | stuck | stuck |
| swim | swam | swum |
| take | took | taken |
| teach | taught | taught |
| tell | told | told |
| think | thought | thought |
| throw | threw | thrown |
| under-stand | understood | understood |
| wake | woke | woken |
| wear | wore | worn |
| win | won | won |
| write | wrote | written |



微信公众号：电子课本大全

# 后　记

本册教科书是人民教育出版社课程教材研究所英语课程教材研究开发中心依据教育部《义务教育英语课程标准（2011年版）》与美国圣智学习集团合作编写的，经国家基础教育课程教材专家工作委员会2013年审查通过。

本册教科书集中反映了基础教育教科书研究与实验的成果，凝聚了参与课改实验的教育专家、学科专家、教研人员以及一线教师的集体智慧。我们感谢所有对教科书的编写、出版提供过帮助与支持的同仁和社会各界朋友，以及整体设计艺术指导吕敬人等。

本册教科书出版之前，我们通过多种渠道与教科书选用作品（包括照片、画作）的作者进行了联系，得到了他们的大力支持。对此，我们表示衷心的感谢！但仍有部分作者未能取得联系，恳请入选作品的作者与我们联系，以便支付稿酬。

我们真诚地希望广大教师、学生及家长在使用本册教科书的过程中提出宝贵意见，并将这些意见和建议及时反馈给我们。让我们携起手来，共同完成义务教育教材建设工作！

联系方式
电　　话：010-58758266, 010-58758279
电子邮箱：jcfk@pep.com.cn

人民教育出版社 课程教材研究所
英语课程教材研究开发中心
2014年3月

微信公众号：电子课本大全